

## NEW PYRIDIN-2-ONE COMPOUNDS USEFUL AS INHIBITORS OF THROMBIN

### Field of the Invention

5

This invention relates to novel pharmaceutically useful compounds, in particular compounds that are, and/or compounds that are metabolised to compounds which are, competitive inhibitors of trypsin-like serine proteases, especially thrombin, their use as medicaments, pharmaceutical  
10 compositions containing them and synthetic routes to their production.

### Background

Blood coagulation is the key process involved in both haemostasis (i.e. the  
15 prevention of blood loss from a damaged vessel) and thrombosis (i.e. the formation of a blood clot in a blood vessel, sometimes leading to vessel obstruction).

Coagulation is the result of a complex series of enzymatic reactions. One of  
20 the ultimate steps in this series of reactions is the conversion of the proenzyme prothrombin to the active enzyme thrombin.

Thrombin is known to play a central role in coagulation. It activates platelets, leading to platelet aggregation, converts fibrinogen into fibrin  
25 monomers, which polymerise spontaneously into fibrin polymers, and activates factor XIII, which in turn crosslinks the polymers to form insoluble fibrin. Furthermore, thrombin activates factor V, factor VIII and FXI leading to a "positive feedback" generation of thrombin from prothrombin.

30

By inhibiting the aggregation of platelets and the formation and crosslinking of fibrin, effective inhibitors of thrombin would be expected to exhibit antithrombotic activity. In addition, antithrombotic activity would be expected to be enhanced by effective inhibition of the positive feedback mechanism. Indeed, the convincing antithrombotic effects of a thrombin inhibitor in man has recently been described by S. Schulman *et al.* in *N. Engl. J. Med.* 349, 1713-1721 (2003).

### Prior Art

10

The early development of low molecular weight inhibitors of thrombin has been described by Claesson in *Blood Coagul. Fibrinol.* 5, 411 (1994).

15

Blombäck *et al.* (in *J. Clin. Lab. Invest.* 24, suppl. 107, 59 (1969)) reported thrombin inhibitors based on the amino acid sequence situated around the cleavage site for the fibrinogen A $\alpha$  chain. Of the amino acid sequences discussed, these authors suggested the tripeptide sequence Phe-Val-Arg (P9-P2-P1, hereinafter referred to as the P3-P2-P1 sequence) would be the most effective inhibitor.

20

Thrombin inhibitors based on peptidyl derivatives, having cyclic or acyclic basic groups at the P1-position (e.g. groups containing amino, amidino or guanidino functions), are disclosed in, for example, International Patent Application numbers WO 93/11152, WO 93/18060, WO 94/29336, WO 95/23609, WO 95/35309, WO 96/03374, WO 96/25426, WO 96/31504, WO 96/32110, WO 97/02284, WO 97/23499, WO 97/46577, WO 97/49404, WO 98/06740, WO 98/57932, WO 99/29664, WO 00/35869, WO 00/42059, WO 01/87879, WO 02/14270, WO 02/44145 and WO 03/018551, European Patent Application numbers 185 390, 468 231, 526

877, 542 525, 559 046 and 641 779, 648 780, 669 317 and US Patent number 4,346,078.

Inhibitors of serine proteases (e.g. thrombin) based on electrophilic ketones  
5 in the P1-position are also known, such as the compounds disclosed in European Patent Application numbers 195 212, 362 002, 364 344 and 530 167.

Inhibitors of trypsin-like serine proteases based on C-terminal boronic acid  
10 derivatives of arginine (and isothiuronium analogues thereof) are known from European Patent Application number 293 881.

Achiral thrombin inhibitors having, at the P2-position of the molecule, a phenyl group, and a cyclic or acyclic basic group at the P3-position, are  
15 disclosed in International Patent Application numbers WO 94/20467, WO 96/06832, WO 96/06849, WO 97/11693, WO 97/24135, WO 98/01422 and WO 01/68605, as well as in *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* 7, 1283 (1997).

International Patent Application numbers WO 99/26920 and WO 01/79155  
20 disclose thrombin inhibitors having groups at the P2-position based, respectively, upon 2-aminophenols and 1,4-benzoquinones. Similar, phenol-based compounds are also disclosed in International Patent Application numbers WO 01/68605 and WO 02/28825.

25 Further known inhibitors of thrombin and other trypsin-like serine proteases are based (at the P2-position of the molecule) on the 3-amino-2-pyridone structural unit. For example, compounds based upon 3-amino-2-pyridone, 3-amino-2-pyrazinone, 5-amino-6-pyrimidone, 5-amino-2,6-pyrimidione and 5-amino-1,3,4-triazin-6-one are disclosed in International Patent  
30 Application numbers WO 96/18644, WO 97/01338, WO 97/30708, WO

98/16547, WO 99/26926, WO 00/73302, WO 00/75134, WO 01/38323, WO 01/04117, WO 01/70229, WO 01/79262, WO 02/057225, WO 02/064140 and WO 03/29224, US patent numbers 5,668,289 and 5,792,779, as well as in *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* 8, 817 (1998) and *J. Med. Chem.* 41, 4466  
5 (1998).

Thrombin inhibitors based upon 2-oxo-3-amino-substituted saturated azaheterocycles are disclosed in International Patent Application number WO 95/35313. More recently, thrombin inhibitors have been disclosed that  
10 are based upon 4-amino-3-morpholinone (see *J. Med. Chem.* 46, 1165 (2003)).

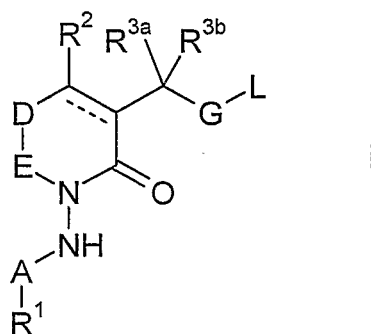
None of the above-mentioned documents disclose or suggest compounds based (at the P2-position) on the 1-amino-2-pyridone or 1-amino-2-  
15 piperidone structural unit.

Moreover, there remains a need for effective inhibitors of trypsin-like serine proteases, such as thrombin. There is also a need for compounds that have a favourable pharmacokinetic profile. Such compounds would be expected to  
20 be useful as anticoagulants and therefore in the therapeutic treatment of thrombosis and related disorders.

### Disclosure of the Invention

25 According to the invention there is provided a compound of formula I

5



wherein

the dashed line is absent or represents a bond;

- 5 A represents C(O), S(O)<sub>2</sub>, C(O)O (in which latter group the O moiety is attached to R<sup>1</sup>), C(O)NH, S(O)<sub>2</sub>NH (in which latter two groups the NH moiety is attached to R<sup>1</sup>) or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylene;

R<sup>1</sup> represents

- 10 (a) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, CN, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl (optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy and aryl), OR<sup>4a</sup>, S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sup>4b</sup>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>4c</sup>)(R<sup>4d</sup>), N(R<sup>4e</sup>)S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>4f</sup>,  
 15 N(R<sup>4g</sup>)(R<sup>4h</sup>), B<sup>1</sup>-C(O)-B<sup>2</sup>-R<sup>4i</sup>, aryl and Het<sup>1</sup>),  
 (b) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl, which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O, CN, C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl (optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy  
 20 and aryl), OR<sup>4a</sup>, S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sup>4b</sup>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>4c</sup>)(R<sup>4d</sup>), N(R<sup>4e</sup>)S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>4f</sup>,  
 N(R<sup>4g</sup>)(R<sup>4h</sup>), B<sup>3</sup>-C(O)-B<sup>4</sup>-R<sup>4i</sup>, aryl and Het<sup>2</sup>,  
 (c) aryl, or  
 (d) Het<sup>3</sup>;

- 25 R<sup>4a</sup> to R<sup>4i</sup> independently represent, at each occurrence,

- (a) H,  
 (b) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, aryl and Het<sup>4</sup>),  
 5 (c) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, aryl and Het<sup>5</sup>),  
 (d) aryl or  
 (e) Het<sup>6</sup>,  
 10 provided that R<sup>4b</sup> does not represent H when n is 1 or 2;

the group -D-E-

- (a) when the dashed line represents a bond, represents -C(R<sup>5a</sup>)=C(R<sup>5b</sup>)-,  
 or  
 15 (b) when the dashed line is absent, represents -C(R<sup>6a</sup>)(R<sup>6b</sup>)-C(R<sup>7a</sup>)(R<sup>7b</sup>)-;  
 R<sup>5a</sup> and R<sup>5b</sup> independently represent H, halo, OH, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-4</sub>O(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl) (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one OH group or one or more F atoms);  
 R<sup>6a</sup>, R<sup>6b</sup>, R<sup>7a</sup> and R<sup>7b</sup> independently represent H, F or methyl;  
 20 or R<sup>5a</sup> and R<sup>5b</sup> together represent C<sub>2-4</sub> *n*-alkylene;  
 or one of R<sup>6a</sup> and R<sup>6b</sup>, together with one of R<sup>7a</sup> and R<sup>7b</sup>, represents C<sub>1-4</sub> *n*-alkylene;

R<sup>2</sup> represents

- 25 (a) H,  
 (b) halo;  
 (c) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, CN, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy, C(O)OH, C(O)O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl  
 30 and OC(O)-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl) or

(d) together with  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^2$  represents  $C_{2-3}$  *n*-alkylene,  $T^1$ -( $C_{1-2}$  *n*-alkylene) or ( $C_{1-2}$  *n*-alkylene)- $T^1$ , which latter three groups are optionally substituted by halo, or

(e) together with  $R^{3a}$  and  $R^{3b}$ ,  $R^2$  represents  $T^2$ -[C(H)=], wherein  $T^2$  is  
 5 bonded to the C-atom to which the group  $R^2$  is attached;

$R^{3a}$  and  $R^{3b}$  independently represent H, F or methyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more F atoms), or

(a) together with  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$  represents  $C_{2-3}$  *n*-alkylene,  $T^1$ -( $C_{1-2}$  *n*-alkylene) or  
 10 ( $C_{1-2}$  *n*-alkylene)- $T^1$ , which latter three groups are optionally substituted by halo, or

(b) together with  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$  and  $R^{3b}$  represent  $T^2$ -[C(H)=], wherein  $T^2$  is bonded to the C-atom to which the group  $R^2$  is attached;

$T^1$  and  $T^2$  independently represent O, S, N(H) or N( $C_{1-4}$  alkyl);

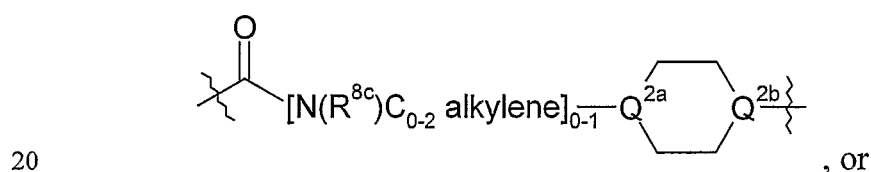
15

G represents

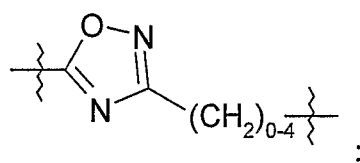
(a)  $-C(O)N(R^{8a})-[CH(C(O)R^9)]_{0-1}-C_{0-3}$  alkylene-( $Q^1$ )<sub>a</sub>-,

(b)  $-C(O)N(R^{8b})-C_{2-3}$  alkenylene-( $Q^1$ )<sub>a</sub>-,

(c)



(d)



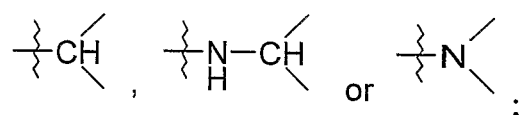
$R^9$  represents H or a 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group comprising one or two rings and containing, as heteroatom(s), one sulfur or  
 25 oxygen atom and/or one or more nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group

is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;

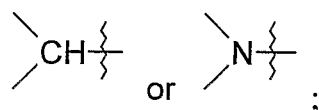
Q<sup>1</sup> represents O, NR<sup>10a</sup>, [N(H)]<sub>0-1</sub>C(O)-C<sub>0-2</sub> alkylene, C(O)NHNHC(O), or -N=C(R<sup>10b</sup>)-;

5     a represents 0 or 1;

$Q^{2a}$  represents



$Q^{2b}$  represents



10

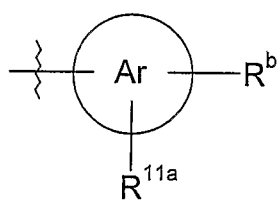
L represents

(a) C<sub>0-6</sub> alkylene-R<sup>a</sup>,

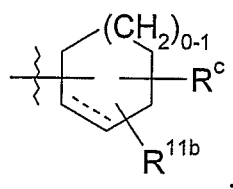
(b) C<sub>0-2</sub> alkylene-CH=CH-C<sub>0-2</sub> alkylene-R<sup>a</sup>,

(c) C<sub>0-2</sub> alkylene-C≡C-C<sub>0-2</sub> alkylene-R<sup>a</sup>,

15 (d)



(e)



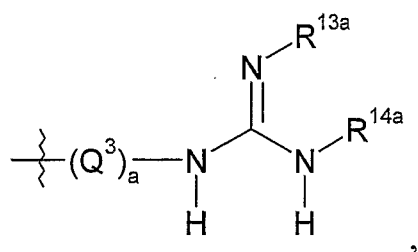
wherein the dashed line represents an optional double bond, or



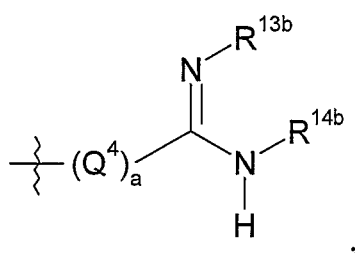
10

$R^a$  to  $R^d$  independently represent

(a)

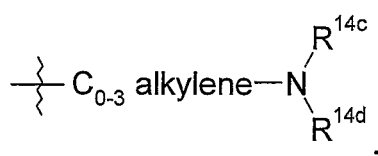


(b)

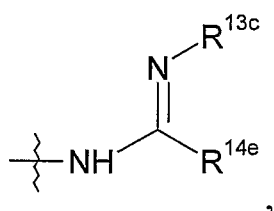


5

(c)

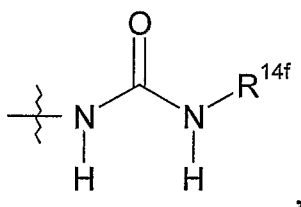


(d)

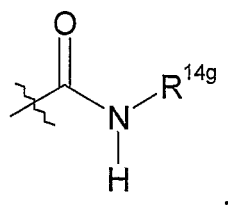


10

(e)



(f)

(g) Het<sup>x</sup>

or R<sup>b</sup> to R<sup>d</sup> may also represent H;

5 Q<sup>3</sup> represents O, N(R<sup>10c</sup>), S(O)<sub>2</sub>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>NH, C(O) or -CH=N-;

Q<sup>4</sup> represents O, S or CH<sub>2</sub>;

a represents 0 or 1;

Het<sup>x</sup> represents a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group containing one to four heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and/or sulfur, which  
 10 heterocyclic group may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more halo atoms);

R<sup>13a</sup> to R<sup>13c</sup> independently represent

15 (a) H,

(b) CN,

(c) NH<sub>2</sub>,

(d) OR<sup>15</sup> or

(e) C(O)OR<sup>16</sup>;

20 R<sup>15</sup> represents

(a) H,

(b) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>3-10</sub> alkynyl,

(c) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl, which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo  
 25 and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, or

(d) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl, which latter group is optionally interrupted by oxygen and is substituted by aryl or -O-aryl;

R<sup>16</sup> represents

- (a) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>3-10</sub> alkynyl, which latter three groups are optionally interrupted by one or more oxygen atoms, or
- (b) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl, which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, or
- (c) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl, which latter group is optionally interrupted by oxygen and is substituted by aryl or -O-aryl;

R<sup>8a</sup> to R<sup>8c</sup>, R<sup>10a</sup> to R<sup>10c</sup> and R<sup>14a</sup> to R<sup>14g</sup> independently represent

- (a) H or
  - (b) C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and OH),
- or R<sup>14a</sup> and R<sup>14b</sup> independently represent C(O)O-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms),

or R<sup>14c</sup> represents

- (a) C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl substituted by C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl or aryl,
- (b) C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl,
- (c) C(O)O-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms),
- (d) C(O)C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl,
- (e) C(O)N(H)-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms) or
- (f) S(O)<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms),

or R<sup>14c</sup> and R<sup>14d</sup> together represent C<sub>3-6</sub> *n*-alkylene optionally interrupted by O, S, N(H) or N(C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl) and/or substituted by one or more C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl groups;

each aryl independently represents a C<sub>6-10</sub> carbocyclic aromatic group, which group may comprise either one or two rings and may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from

- (a) halo,
- 5 (b) CN,
- (c) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, C(O)OH, C(O)O-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>7</sup>),
- 10 (d) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>8</sup>),
- (e) OR<sup>17a</sup>,
- 15 (f) S(O)<sub>p</sub>R<sup>17b</sup>,
- (g) S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>17c</sup>)(R<sup>17d</sup>),
- (h) N(R<sup>17e</sup>)S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>17f</sup>,
- (i) N(R<sup>17g</sup>)(R<sup>17h</sup>),
- (j) B<sup>5</sup>-C(O)-B<sup>6</sup>-R<sup>17i</sup>,
- 20 (k) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo),
- (l) Het<sup>9</sup> and
- (m) Si(R<sup>18a</sup>)(R<sup>18b</sup>)(R<sup>18c</sup>);

R<sup>17a</sup> to R<sup>17i</sup> independently represent, at each occurrence,

- 25 (a) H,
- (b) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>10</sup>),

- (c) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>11</sup>),
- 5 (d) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) or
- (e) Het<sup>12</sup>,
- provided that R<sup>17b</sup> does not represent H when p is 1 or 2;

Het<sup>1</sup> to Het<sup>12</sup> independently represent 4- to 14-membered heterocyclic groups containing one or more heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and/or sulfur, which heterocyclic groups may comprise one, two or three rings and may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from

- (a) halo,
- (b) CN,
- 15 (c) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, C(O)OH, C(O)O-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>a</sup>),
- (d) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl (which latter two groups are
- 20 optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>b</sup>),
- (e) =O,
- (f) OR<sup>19a</sup>,
- 25 (g) S(O)<sub>q</sub>R<sup>19b</sup>,
- (h) S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>19c</sup>)(R<sup>19d</sup>),
- (i) N(R<sup>19e</sup>)S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>19f</sup>,
- (j) N(R<sup>19g</sup>)(R<sup>19h</sup>),
- (k) B<sup>7</sup>-C(O)-B<sup>8</sup>-R<sup>19i</sup>,
- 30 (l) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo),

(m) Het<sup>c</sup> and

(n) Si(R<sup>20a</sup>)(R<sup>20b</sup>)(R<sup>20c</sup>);

R<sup>19a</sup> to R<sup>19i</sup> independently represent, at each occurrence,

5 (a) H,

(b) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>d</sup>),

10 (c) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>e</sup>),

(d) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) or

15 (e) Het<sup>f</sup>,

provided that R<sup>19b</sup> does not represent H when q is 1 or 2;

Het<sup>a</sup> to Het<sup>f</sup> independently represent 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic groups containing one to four heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and/or  
20 sulfur, which heterocyclic groups may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;

B<sup>1</sup> to B<sup>8</sup> independently represent a direct bond, O, S or NH;

n, p and q independently represent 0, 1 or 2;

25

R<sup>18a</sup>, R<sup>18b</sup>, R<sup>18c</sup>, R<sup>20a</sup>, R<sup>20b</sup> and R<sup>20c</sup> independently represent C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo or C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl);

unless otherwise specified

- (i) alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, alkylene and alkenylene groups, as well as the alkyl part of alkoxy groups, may be substituted by one or more halo atoms, and
- 5 (ii) cycloalkyl and cycloalkenyl groups may comprise one or two rings and may additionally be ring-fused to one or two phenyl groups;

or a pharmaceutically-acceptable derivative thereof,

- 10 which compounds are referred to hereinafter as “the compounds of the invention”.

The term “pharmaceutically-acceptable derivatives” includes pharmaceutically-acceptable salts (e.g. acid addition salts).

15

For the avoidance of doubt, the definitions of the terms aryl, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, alkylene, alkenylene and alkoxy groups provided above apply, unless otherwise stated, at each usage of such terms herein.

20

The term “halo”, when used herein, includes fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo.

- Heterocyclic (Het, Het<sup>1</sup> to Het<sup>12</sup>, Het<sup>a</sup> to Het<sup>f</sup> and Het<sup>x</sup>) groups may be fully saturated, partly unsaturated, wholly aromatic or partly aromatic in
- 25 character. Values of heterocyclic (Het, Het<sup>1</sup> to Het<sup>12</sup>, Het<sup>a</sup> to Het<sup>f</sup> and Het<sup>x</sup>) groups that may be mentioned include 1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octanyl, benzimidazolyl, benzo[c]isoxazolidinyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzodioxanyl, benzodioxepanyl, benzodioxolyl, benzofuranyl, benzofurazanyl, benzomorpholinyl, 2,1,3-benzoxadiazolyl, benzoxazolidinyl, benzoxazolyl,
- 30 benzopyrazolyl, benzo[e]pyrimidine, 2,1,3-benzothiadiazolyl, benzo-

thiazolyl, benzothienyl, benzotriazolyl, chromanyl, chromenyl, cinnolinyl, 2,3-dihydrobenzimidazolyl, 2,3-dihydrobenzo[*b*]furanyl, 1,3-dihydrobenzo[*c*]furanyl, 1,3-dihydro-2,1-benzisoxazolyl, 2,3-dihydropyrrolo[2,3-*b*]-pyridinyl, dioxanyl, furanyl, hexahydropyrimidinyl, hydantoinyl, 5 imidazolyl, imidazo[1,2-*a*]pyridinyl, imidazo[2,3-*b*]thiazolyl, indolyl, isoquinolinyl, isoxazolidinyl, isoxazolyl, maleimido, morpholinyl, naphtho[1,2-*b*]furanyl, oxadiazolyl, 1,2- or 1,3-oxazinanyl, oxazolyl, phthalazinyl, piperazinyl, piperidinyl, purinyl, pyranyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl, pyridinyl, pyridonyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolidinonyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, 10 pyrrolo[2,3-*b*]pyridinyl, pyrrolo[5,1-*b*]pyridinyl, pyrrolo[2,3-*c*]pyridinyl, pyrrolyl, quinazolinyl, quinolinyl, sulfolanyl, 3-sulfolenyl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzimidazolyl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzopyrazolyl, 5,6,7,8-tetrahydrobenzo[*e*]pyrimidine, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, 3,4,5,6-tetrahydropyridinyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyrimidinyl, 3,4,5,6-tetrahydro- 15 pyrimidinyl, thiadiazolyl, thiazolidinyl, thiazolyl, thienyl, thieno[5,1-*c*]pyridinyl, thiochromanyl, triazolyl, 1,3,4-triazolo[2,3-*b*]pyrimidinyl, xanthenyl and the like.

Values of Het that may be mentioned include 1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octanyl, 20 benzimidazolyl, benzo[*c*]isoxazolidinyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzo[*b*]furanyl, benzopyrazolyl, benzo[*e*]pyrimidine, benzothiazolyl, benzo[*b*]thienyl, benzotriazolyl, 2-oxo-2,3-dihydrobenzimidazolyl, 1,3-dihydro-2,1-benzisoxazolyl, 2,3-dihydropyrrolo[2,3-*b*]pyridinyl, furanyl, 2-imino-hexahydropyrimidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazo[1,2-*a*]pyridinyl, indolyl, 25 isoquinolinyl, isoxazolidinyl, isoxazolyl, 1,2,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,2-oxazinanyl, 2-imino-1,3-oxazinanyl, piperazinyl, piperidinyl, 2-oxo-piperidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridinyl, pyrimidinyl, 2-imino-pyrrolidinyl, 3-pyrrolinyl, pyrrolo[2,3-*b*]pyridinyl, pyrrolo[5,1-*b*]pyridinyl, pyrrolo[2,3-*c*]pyridinyl, pyrrolyl, quinolinyl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenz- 30 imidazolyl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzopyrazolyl, 5,6,7,8-tetrahydrobenzo[*e*]-

pyrimidine, 3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-pyridinyl, 3,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidinyl, 2-imino-thiazolidinyl, thiazolyl, thienyl and thieno[5,1-*c*]pyridinyl.

Values of Het<sup>1</sup> that may be mentioned include benzodioxolyl,  
5 benzo[*b*]furanyl, 2,3-dihydrobenzo[*b*]furanyl, pyridinyl, pyrimidinyl and thienyl.

Values of Het<sup>3</sup> that may be mentioned include benzodioxanyl,  
benzo[*b*]dioxepanyl, benzodioxolyl, benzomorpholinyl, 2,1,3-benzoxa-  
10 diazolyl, 2-oxo-benzoxazolidinyl, benzopyrazolyl, 2,1,3-benzothiadiazolyl,  
benzo[*b*]thienyl, 2-oxo-chromenyl, 2,3-dihydrobenzo[*b*]furanyl, 1-oxo-1,3-  
dihydrobenzo[*c*]furanyl, furanyl, imidazolyl, imidazo[2,3-*b*]thiazolyl,  
isoquinolinyl, isoxazolyl, naphtho[1,2-*b*]furanyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl,  
pyridinyl, pyridonyl, pyrrolyl, quinolinyl, sulfolanyl, 3-sulfolenyl, 2,4-  
15 dioxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyrimidinyl, thiazolyl, thienyl, 1,3,4-triazolo[2,3-  
*b*]pyrimidinyl and xanthenyl.

Values of Het<sup>9</sup> that may be mentioned include morpholinyl, 1,3,4-  
oxadiazolyl, oxazolyl and pyrazolyl.

20

Values of Het<sup>10</sup> that may be mentioned include isoxazolyl, oxazolyl and thiazolyl.

Values of Het<sup>c</sup> that may be mentioned include isoxazolyl, morpholinyl,  
25 oxazolyl, pyridinyl, thienyl and triazolyl (e.g. 1,3,4-triazolyl).

Values of Het<sup>x</sup> that may be mentioned include dihydrooxadiazolyl (e.g. 4,5-dihydro-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl), oxadiazolyl (e.g. 1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl), tetrazolyl (e.g. triazol-1-yl) and triazolyl (e.g. 1,2,4-triazol-1-yl).

30

Substituents on heterocyclic (Het, Het<sup>1</sup> to Het<sup>12</sup>, Het<sup>a</sup> to Het<sup>f</sup> and Het<sup>x</sup>) groups may, where appropriate, be located on any atom in the ring system including a heteroatom. The point of attachment of heterocyclic (Het, Het<sup>1</sup> to Het<sup>12</sup>, Het<sup>a</sup> to Het<sup>f</sup> and Het<sup>x</sup>) groups may be *via* any atom in the ring system including (where appropriate) a heteroatom, or an atom on any fused carbocyclic ring that may be present as part of the ring system.

For the avoidance of doubt, cycloalkyl and cycloalkenyl groups may be monocyclic or, where the number of C-atoms allows, be bi- or tri-cyclic (although monocyclic cycloalkyl and cycloalkenyl are preferred). Further, when a cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group is fused to two phenyl groups, the phenyl groups may also be fused to each other (to form a fused tricyclic ring system).

Compounds of formula I may exhibit tautomerism. All tautomeric forms and mixtures thereof are included within the scope of the invention.

Compounds of formula I may also contain one or more asymmetric carbon atoms and may therefore exhibit optical and/or diastereoisomerism. Diastereoisomers may be separated using conventional techniques, e.g. chromatography or fractional crystallisation. The various stereoisomers may be isolated by separation of a racemic or other mixture of the compounds using conventional, e.g. fractional crystallisation or HPLC, techniques. Alternatively the desired optical isomers may be made by reaction of the appropriate optically active starting materials under conditions which will not cause racemisation or epimerisation, or by derivatisation, for example with a homochiral acid followed by separation of the diastereomeric esters by conventional means (e.g. HPLC, chromatography over silica). All stereoisomers are included within the scope of the invention.

Abbreviations are listed at the end of this specification. The wavy lines on the bonds in structural fragments signify the bond positions of those fragments.

5 Compounds of formula I that may be mentioned include those in which:

(1)  $R^{5a}$  represents H, halo, OH,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by  $C_{1-3}$  alkoxy) or  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy;

(2)  $R^{5b}$ ,  $R^{6a}$ ,  $R^{6b}$ ,  $R^{7a}$  and  $R^{7b}$  independently represent H, F or methyl;

(3)  $R^2$  represents

10 (a) H,

(b) halo;

(c)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, CN,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy,  $C(O)OH$ ,  $C(O)O-C_{1-4}$  alkyl and  $OC(O)-C_{1-4}$  alkyl) or

15 (d) together with  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^2$  represents  $C_{2-3}$  *n*-alkylene or  $O-(C_{1-2}$  *n*-alkylene), which latter two groups are optionally substituted by halo and wherein the O-atom of the latter group is bonded to the C-atom to which the group  $R^2$  is attached;

20 (4)  $R^{3a}$  and  $R^{3b}$  independently represent H, F or methyl, or  $R^{3a}$ , together with  $R^2$ , represents  $C_{2-3}$  *n*-alkylene or  $O-(C_{1-2}$  *n*-alkylene), which latter two groups are optionally substituted by halo and wherein the O-atom of the latter group is bonded to the C-atom to which the group  $R^2$  is attached;

(5)  $R^{11a}$  represents H or one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, 25 CN,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl and  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy,  $C(O)OR^{12a}$  and  $C(O)N(R^{12b})R^{12c}$ );

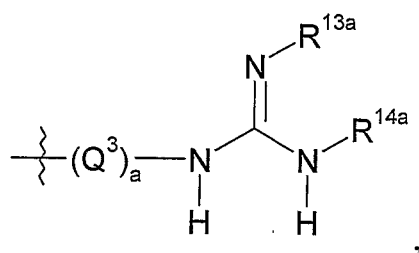
(6)  $R^{11b}$  and  $R^{11c}$  independently represent H or one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, CN,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected 30

from halo, OH, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy, C(O)OR<sup>12a</sup> and C(O)N(R<sup>12b</sup>)R<sup>12c</sup>), =O, =NH, =NOH and =N-CN;

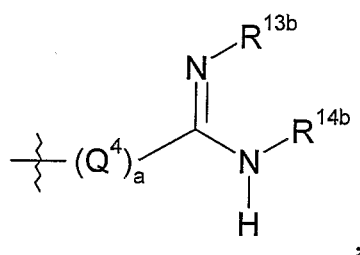
(7) R<sup>12a</sup> to R<sup>12c</sup> independently represent H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more halo atoms);

(8) R<sup>a</sup> to R<sup>d</sup> independently represent

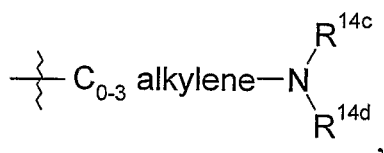
(a)



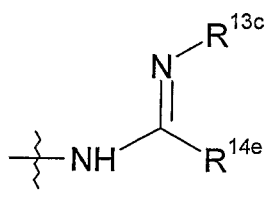
(b)



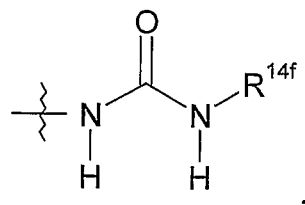
(c)



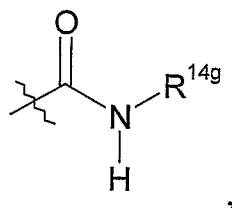
(d)



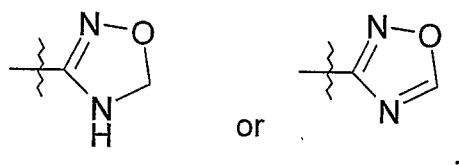
(e)



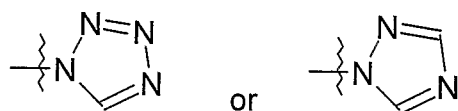
(f)



5 (g)



(h)



or R<sup>b</sup> to R<sup>d</sup> may also represent H.

10

Other compounds of formula I that may be mentioned include those in which:

R<sup>8a</sup> to R<sup>8c</sup>, R<sup>10a</sup> to R<sup>10c</sup> and R<sup>14a</sup> to R<sup>14g</sup> independently represent

(a) H or

15 (b) C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and OH),

or R<sup>14c</sup> represents

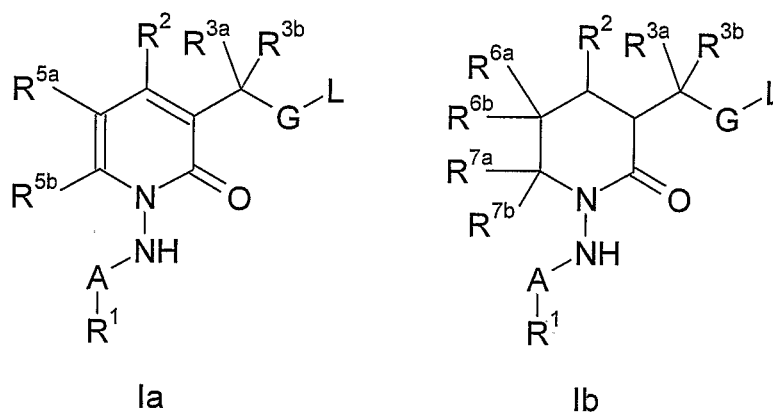
(a) C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl substituted by C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl or aryl,

(b) C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl,

20 (c) C(O)O-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms),

- (d) C(O)C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl,  
 (e) C(O)N(H)-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms) or  
 (f) S(O)<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms),  
 or R<sup>14c</sup> and R<sup>14d</sup> together represent C<sub>3-6</sub> *n*-alkylene optionally interrupted by O, S, N(H) or N(C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl) and/or substituted by one or more C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl groups.

- Compounds of formula I may alternatively be represented as compounds of formulae Ia and Ib,



wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3a</sup>, R<sup>3b</sup>, R<sup>5a</sup>, R<sup>5b</sup>, R<sup>6a</sup>, R<sup>6b</sup>, R<sup>7a</sup>, R<sup>7b</sup>, A, G and L are as hereinbefore defined.

In this respect, the skilled person will understand that the preferences given below in respect of compounds of formula I apply equally (where appropriate) to compounds of formulae Ia and Ib (either together or separately).

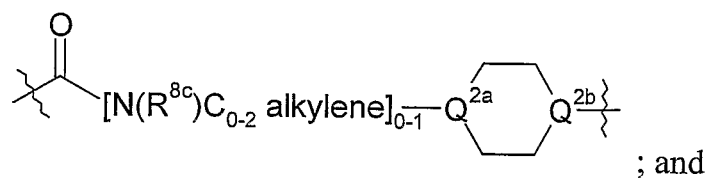
Preferred values of G include:

- (a) -C(O)N(R<sup>8a</sup>)-C<sub>0-3</sub> alkylene-;  
 (b) -C(O)N(R<sup>8a</sup>)-CH(C(O)R<sup>9</sup>)-C<sub>0-3</sub> alkylene-;

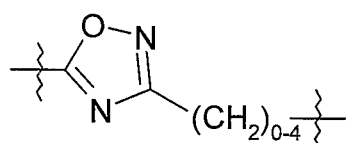
(c)  $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{8a})-\text{C}_{1-3} \text{ alkylene}-\text{Q}^1-$ ;

(d)  $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{8b})-\text{C}_{2-3} \text{ alkenylene}-$ ;

(e)

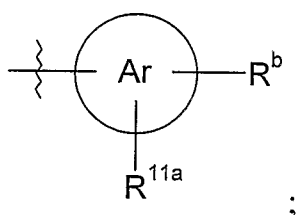


5 (f)

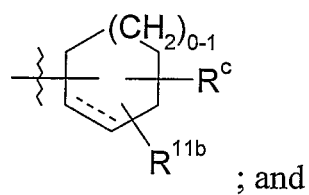


When G represents  $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{8a})-\text{C}_{0-3} \text{ alkylene}-\text{Q}^1-$ , preferred values of L include:

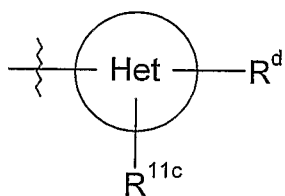
10 (a)



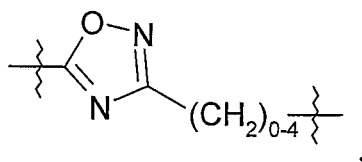
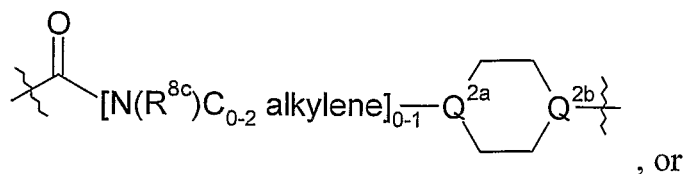
(b)



(c)

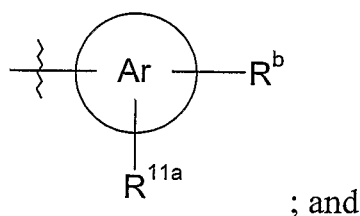


When G represents  $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^{8b})-\text{C}_{2-3}$  alkenylene-,

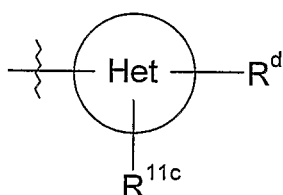


preferred values of L include:

5 (a)



(b)



10 Compounds of formula I that are preferred include those in which:

(1) A represents  $\text{C}(\text{O})$ ,  $\text{S}(\text{O})_2$ ,  $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}$  (in which latter group the NH moiety is attached to  $\text{R}^1$ ) or  $\text{C}_{1-4}$  alkenylene;

(2)  $\text{R}^1$  represents

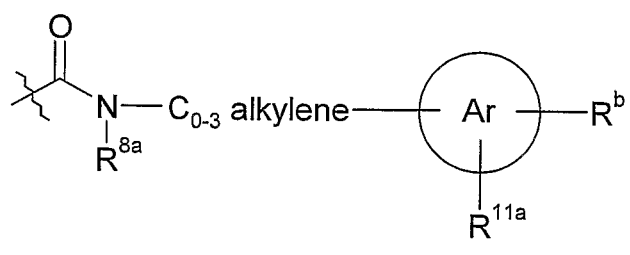
15 (a)  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, CN,  $\text{C}_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl (optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH,  $=\text{O}$ ,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkoxy and aryl),  $\text{OR}^{4a}$ ,  $\text{SR}^{4b}$ ,  $\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{4b}$ ,  $\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{H})\text{R}^{4c}$ ,  $\text{N}(\text{H})\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{4f}$ ,  $\text{N}(\text{R}^{4g})(\text{R}^{4h})$ ,  $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{4i}$ ,  $\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{4i}$ ,  $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{4i}$ ,  $\text{N}(\text{H})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{4i}$ ,  $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{H})\text{R}^{4i}$ , aryl and  $\text{Het}^1$ ),

20

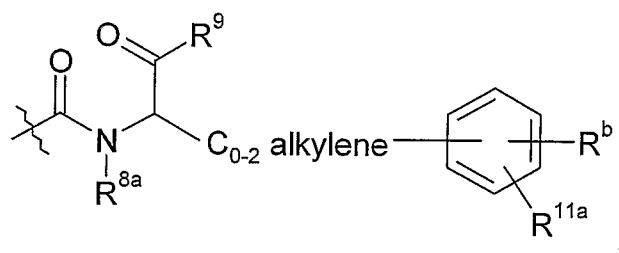
- (b) C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>4-8</sub> cycloalkenyl, which latter two groups are optionally fused to one or two phenyl groups and are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>4-6</sub> cycloalkyl (optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy and phenyl), OR<sup>4a</sup>, SR<sup>4b</sup>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>4b</sup>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(H)R<sup>4c</sup>, N(H)S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>4f</sup>, N(R<sup>4g</sup>)(R<sup>4h</sup>), OC(O)R<sup>4i</sup>, C(O)OR<sup>4i</sup>, N(H)C(O)R<sup>4i</sup>, C(O)N(H)R<sup>4i</sup>, aryl and Het<sup>2</sup>,
- (c) aryl, or
- (d) Het<sup>3</sup>;
- (3) R<sup>4a</sup> to R<sup>4i</sup> independently represent, at each occurrence,
- (a) H,
- (b) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy, aryl and Het<sup>4</sup>),
- (c) C<sub>4-6</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-6</sub> cycloalkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl),
- (d) aryl or
- (e) Het<sup>6</sup>,
- provided that R<sup>4b</sup> does not represent H when n is 1 or 2;
- (4) R<sup>5a</sup> represents H, F, methyl or methoxy;
- (5) R<sup>5b</sup> represents H;
- (6) R<sup>6a</sup> and R<sup>6b</sup> both represent H, both represent methyl or both represent F;
- (7) R<sup>7a</sup> and R<sup>7b</sup> both represent H;
- (8) R<sup>2</sup> represents H, halo, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy or C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo (e.g. F), OH or methoxy);
- (9) R<sup>3a</sup> and R<sup>3b</sup> independently represent H or F;

(10) the group G-L takes any of the following definitions

- (a)  $C(O)N(R^{8a})-C_{0-6}$  alkylene- $R^a$ ,  
 (b)  $C(O)N(R^{8a})-CH(C(O)R^9)-C_{0-5}$  alkylene- $R^a$ ,  
 (c)  $C(O)N(R^{8a})-C_{0-3}$  alkylene- $CH=CH-C_{0-2}$  alkylene- $R^a$ ,  
 5 (d)  $C(O)N(R^{8a})-C_{0-3}$  alkylene- $C\equiv C-C_{0-2}$  alkylene- $R^a$ ,  
 (e)

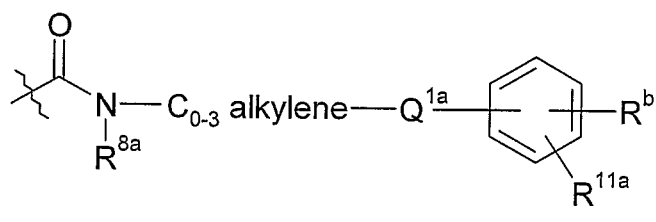


(f)

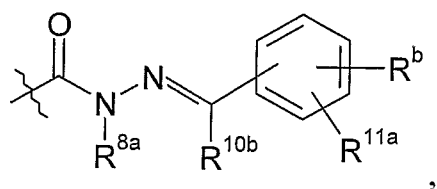


10

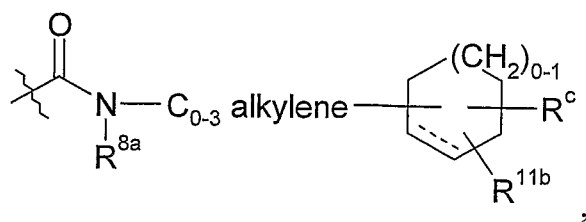
(g)



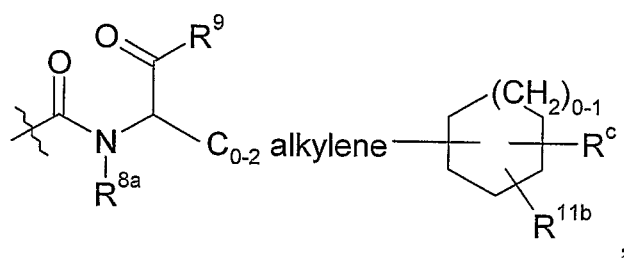
(h)



(i)

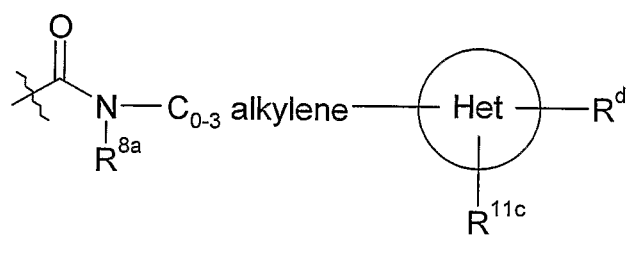


(j)

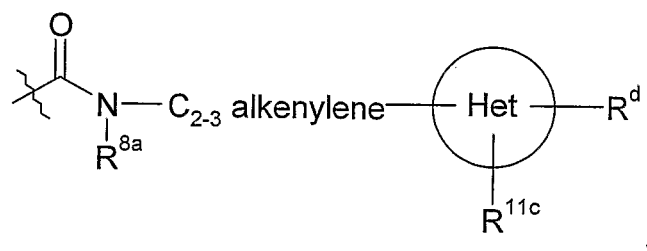


5

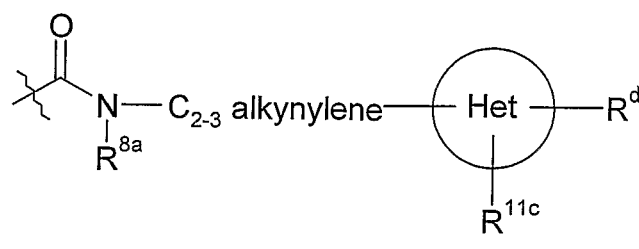
(k)



(l)

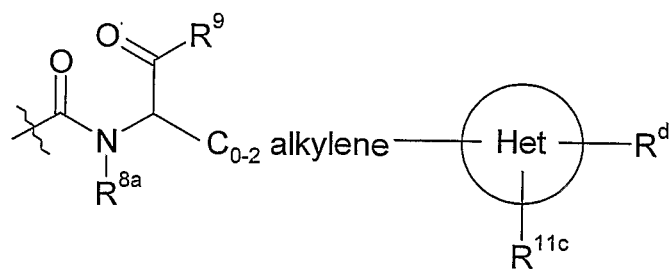


(m)

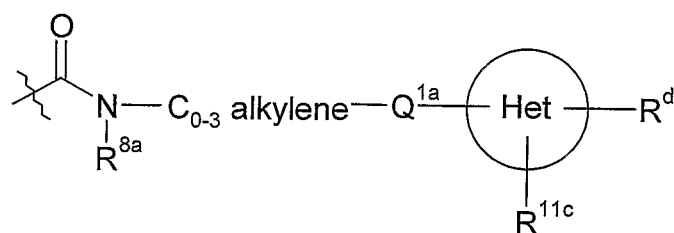


10

(n)

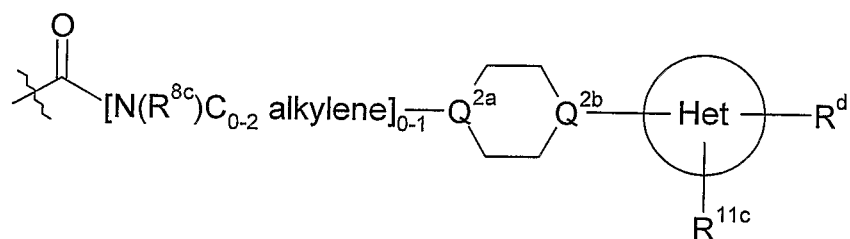


(o)



5

(p)



wherein  $Q^{1a}$  represents O,  $NR^{10a}$  or  $[N(H)]_{0-1}C(O)-C_{0-2}$  alkylene;

(11)  $R^9$  represents a 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group comprising one or two rings and containing, as heteroatom(s), one sulfur or oxygen atom and/or one to three nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl;

(12) Het represents a 5- or 6-membered monocyclic, or a 8-, 9- or 10-membered bicyclic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), one sulfur or oxygen atom and/or one to four nitrogen atoms;

(13)  $R^{11a}$  represents H or one to three substituents selected from halo, OH, CN,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl and  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from OH,

halo,  $C(O)OR^{12a}$  and  $C(O)N(R^{12b})R^{12c}$  (e.g. one or more substituents selected from the latter three groups));

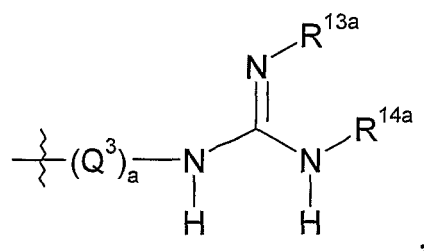
(14)  $R^{11b}$  represents H or one to three substituents selected from halo, OH,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy and =O;

5 (15)  $R^{11c}$  represents H or one to three substituents selected from halo, OH, CN,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH and  $C_{1-2}$  alkoxy), =O, =NH, =NOH and =N-CN;

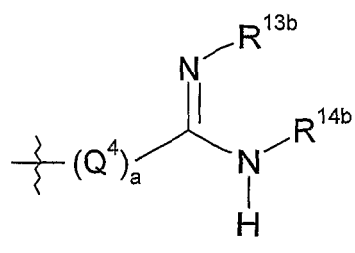
10 (16)  $R^{12a}$  to  $R^{12c}$  independently represent H,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl (optionally substituted by one  $N(R^{12e})R^{12f}$  group) or  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl (e.g. H,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl or  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl);

(17)  $R^a$  represents

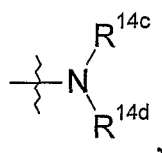
(a)



15 (b)

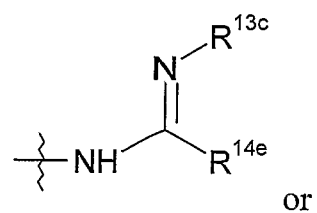


(c)

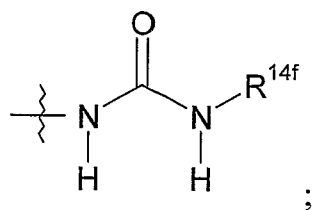


31

(d)

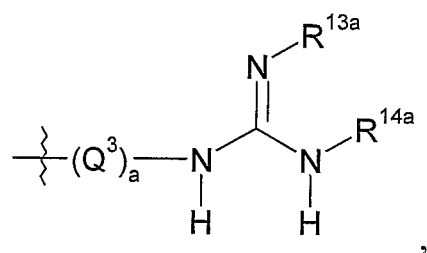


(e)

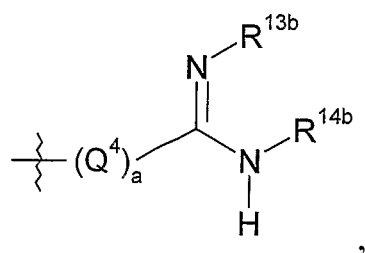
5 (18)  $\text{R}^b$  represents

(a) H,

(b)

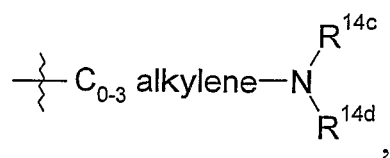


(c)

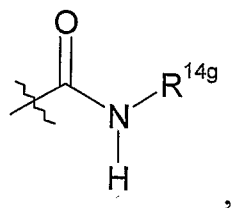


10

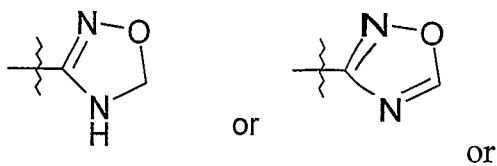
(d)



(e)

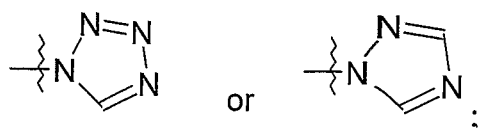


(f)

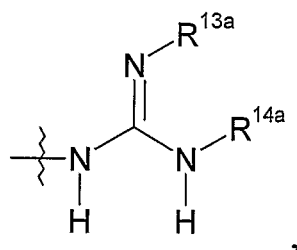


5

(g)

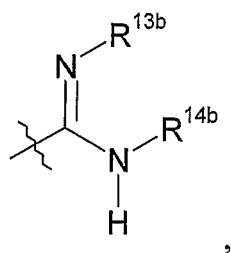
(19)  $R^c$  and  $R^d$  independently represent

(a)

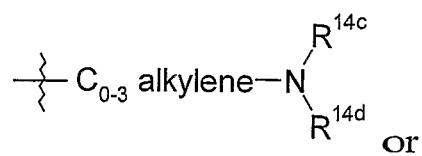


10

(b)



(c)

(d)  $R^d$  may also represent H;15 (20)  $Q^3$  represents O,  $S(O)_2$ ,  $S(O)_2NH$ ,  $C(O)$  or  $-CH=N-$ ;

- (21)  $Q^4$  represents O or S;
- (22)  $R^{15}$  represents H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{3-6}$  alkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally interrupted by an oxygen atom),  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl or  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl (which latter group is substituted by aryl);
- 5 (23)  $R^{16}$  represents  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{3-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl or  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl substituted by aryl;
- (24)  $R^{8a}$  to  $R^{8c}$  represent H or methyl;
- (25)  $R^{10a}$  to  $R^{10c}$  independently represent H or  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by OH or one or more halo atoms);
- 10 (26)  $R^{14a}$  represents  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl,  $C(O)O-C_{1-5}$  alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by phenyl) or H (e.g. H or  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl);
- (27)  $R^{14b}$  to  $R^{14g}$  independently represents H or  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more halo atoms, but is preferably unsubstituted), or  $R^{14c}$  represents  $C_{4-6}$  cycloalkyl or  $C(O)O-C_{1-5}$  alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by phenyl) or  $R^{14c}$  and  $R^{14d}$  together represent  $C_{4-5}$  *n*-alkylene optionally interrupted by O;
- 15 (28) each aryl independently represents phenyl or naphthyl, each of which groups may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from
- 20 (a) halo,
- (b) CN,
- (c)  $C_{1-8}$  alkyl,  $C_{2-4}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-4}$  alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH,  $C_{1-2}$  alkoxy,  $C(O)OH$ ,  $C(O)O-C_{1-2}$  alkyl and phenyl),
- 25 (d)  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O and  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl,
- (e)  $OR^{17a}$ ,
- 30 (f)  $SR^{17b}$ ,  $S(O)_2R^{17b}$ ,

- (g)  $\text{S(O)}_2\text{N(H)R}^{17c}$ ,  
 (h)  $\text{N(H)S(O)}_2\text{R}^{17f}$ ,  
 (i)  $\text{N(H)R}^{17g}$ ,  
 (j)  $\text{C(O)R}^{17i}$ ,  $\text{C(O)OR}^{17i}$ ,  $\text{OC(O)R}^{17i}$ ,  $\text{C(O)N(H)R}^{17i}$ ,  
 5  $\text{N(H)C(O)R}^{17i}$ ,  $\text{N(H)C(O)OR}^{17i}$ ,  
 (k) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more halo atoms),  
 (l)  $\text{Het}^9$  and  
 (m)  $\text{Si(CH}_3)_3$ ;  
 10 (29)  $\text{R}^{17a}$  to  $\text{R}^{17i}$  independently represent, at each occurrence,  
 (a) H,  
 (b)  $\text{C}_{1-8}$  alkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH,  $\text{C}_{1-2}$  alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more halo atoms) and  $\text{Het}^{10}$  (e.g. one or more substituents selected from halo, OH,  $\text{C}_{1-2}$  alkoxy and phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more halo atoms)),  
 15 (c)  $\text{C}_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O and  $\text{C}_{1-4}$  alkyl,  
 (d) phenyl optionally substituted by one or more halo atoms or  
 20 (e)  $\text{Het}^{12}$ ,  
 provided that  $\text{R}^{17b}$  does not represent H;  
 (30)  $\text{Het}^1$  to  $\text{Het}^{12}$  independently represent 5- to 13-membered heterocyclic groups containing one to four heteroatoms selected from  
 25 oxygen, nitrogen and/or sulfur, which heterocyclic groups may comprise one, two or three rings and may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from  
 (a) halo,  
 (b) CN,

- (c) C<sub>1-8</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH and C<sub>1-2</sub> alkoxy),
- (d) C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl,
- (e) =O,
- (f) OR<sup>19a</sup>,
- (g) S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>19b</sup>,
- (h) S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(H)R<sup>19c</sup>,
- (i) N(H)S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>19f</sup>,
- (j) N(H)R<sup>19g</sup>,
- (j) C(O)R<sup>19i</sup>, C(O)OR<sup>19i</sup>, C(O)N(H)R<sup>19i</sup>, N(H)C(O)R<sup>19i</sup>, N(H)C(O)OR<sup>19i</sup>,
- (l) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and
- (m) Het<sup>c</sup>;
- (31) R<sup>19a</sup> to R<sup>19i</sup> independently represent, at each occurrence,
- (a) H,
- (b) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-2</sub> alkoxy and phenyl,
- (c) C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl,
- (d) phenyl optionally substituted by halo or
- (e) Het<sup>f</sup>,
- provided that R<sup>19b</sup> does not represent H;
- (32) Het<sup>a</sup> to Het<sup>f</sup> independently represent 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic groups containing, as heteroatoms, one oxygen or sulfur atom and/or one to three nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic groups may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

(33) alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, alkylene and alkenylene groups, as well as the alkyl part of alkoxy groups, may be substituted by one or more Cl or, particularly, F atoms.

- 5 Also preferred are compounds of formula I in which  $R^{3a}$  and  $R^{3b}$  both take the same definition (i.e. compounds in which  $R^5$  and  $R^6$  both represent H, both represent F or both represent methyl,  $CH_2F$ ,  $CHF_2$  or  $CF_3$ ).

When A represents C(O) or C(O)NH (in which latter group the NH moiety is attached to  $R^1$ ), preferred compounds of formula I also include those in which  $R^1$  represents:

(a)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, which latter three groups are

(i) substituted by one substituent selected from  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl (optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy and aryl), aryl and Het<sup>1</sup>, and

(ii) optionally substituted by one or more further substituents selected from halo, CN,  $C_{4-6}$  cycloalkyl (optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl),  $OR^{4a}$ ,  $SR^{4b}$ ,  $S(O)_2R^{4b}$ ,  $S(O)_2N(H)R^{4c}$ ,  $N(H)S(O)_2R^{4f}$ ,  $N(R^{4g})(R^{4h})$ ,  $OC(O)R^{4i}$ ,  $C(O)OR^{4i}$ ,  $N(H)C(O)R^{4i}$ ,  $C(O)N(H)R^{4i}$ , aryl and Het<sup>1</sup>;

(b)  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl or  $C_{4-8}$  cycloalkenyl, which latter two groups are

(i) fused to one or two phenyl groups and optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl and  $C(O)OR^{4i}$ , or

(ii) substituted by aryl and optionally further substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl;

(c) aryl; or

(d) Het<sup>3</sup>,

wherein  $R^{4a}$  to  $R^{4c}$ ,  $R^{4f}$  to  $R^{4i}$  aryl and  $Het^1$  are as defined above or below.

When A represents  $S(O)_2$ , preferred compounds of formula I also include those in which  $R^1$  represents:

- 5 (a)  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl or  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl, which latter two groups are substituted by aryl and are optionally further substituted by one or more halo atoms;
- (b)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo,  $OR^{4a}$  and  $S(O)_2R^{4b}$ ;
- (c)  $C_{3-6}$  monocyclic cycloalkyl optionally substituted by one or more  
10 substituents selected from halo and  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl;
- (d)  $C_{6-8}$  bicyclic cycloalkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O and  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;
- (c) aryl; or
- (d)  $Het^3$ ,
- 15 wherein  $R^{4a}$  and  $R^{4b}$  are as defined above or below.

When A represents  $C_{1-6}$  alkylene, preferred compounds of formula I also include those in which  $R^1$  represents:

- 20 (a)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl or  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and OH;
- (b)  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl or  $C_{4-8}$  (e.g.  $C_{4-6}$ ) cycloalkenyl, which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one to four substituents selected from halo, =O, OH,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl, O- $C_{1-4}$  alkyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more halo (e.g. F) atoms) and  
25 aryl, or, particularly,
- (c) aryl (e.g. naphthyl or, particularly, phenyl), or
- (d)  $Het^3$ ,
- (e.g. any one of the groups listed in (b) to (d) above).

Compounds of formula I that are more preferred include those in which the group G-L takes any of the preferred definitions provided at (10)(a), (c), (d), (e), (g), (h), (i), (k), (l), (m), (o) and (p) above.

5 More preferred compounds of formula I particularly include compounds in which:

(1) A represents C(O), S(O)<sub>2</sub>, C(O)NH (in which latter group the NH moiety is attached to R<sup>1</sup>) or C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylene;

(2) R<sup>1</sup> represents

10 (a) C<sub>1-5</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, C<sub>6-8</sub> bicyclic cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> monocyclic cycloalkyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy and phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy)), OR<sup>4a</sup>, SR<sup>4b</sup>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>4b</sup>, C(O)R<sup>4i</sup>, OC(O)R<sup>4i</sup>, C(O)OR<sup>4i</sup>, aryl and Het<sup>1</sup>),

15 (b) C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>4-8</sub> (e.g. C<sub>4-6</sub>) cycloalkenyl, which latter two groups are optionally fused to one or two phenyl groups and are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, OR<sup>4a</sup>, C(O)OR<sup>4i</sup> and phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy),

20 (c) aryl, or

(d) Het<sup>3</sup>;

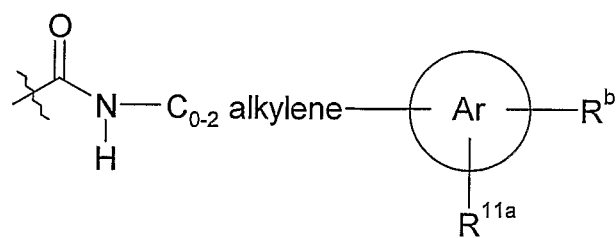
(3) R<sup>4a</sup> to R<sup>4i</sup> independently represent, at each occurrence,

25 (a) H,

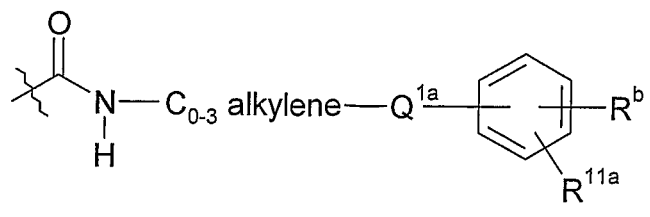
- (b)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{2-4}$  alkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy and phenyl),
- (c)  $C_{4-6}$  cycloalkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl) or
- (d) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl and  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy)

provided that  $R^{4b}$  does not represent H;

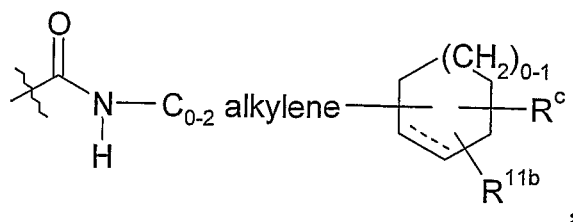
- (4)  $R^2$  represents H, halo (such as Cl) or  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by F);
- (5)  $R^{3a}$  and  $R^{3b}$  both represent H or both represent F;
- (6)  $R^{5a}$  represents H;
- (7)  $R^{6a}$  and  $R^{6b}$  both represent H;
- (8) the group G-L takes any of the following definitions
- (i)  $C(O)N(H)-C_{0-5}$  alkylene- $R^{a1}$ ,
- (ii)  $C(O)N(H)-C_{0-3}$  alkylene- $CH=CH-R^{a2}$ ,
- (iii)  $C(O)N(H)-C_{1-3}$  alkylene- $C\equiv C-CH_2-R^{a3}$ ,
- (iv)



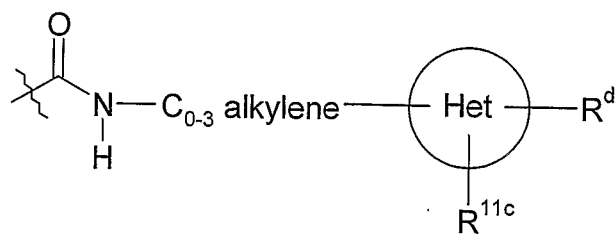
(v)



(vi)

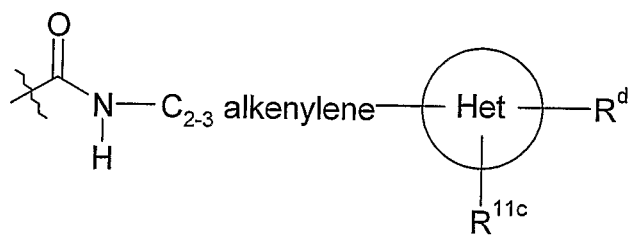


(vii)

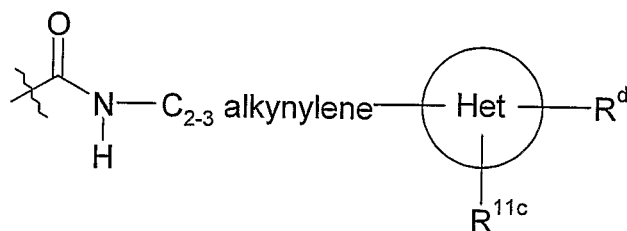


5

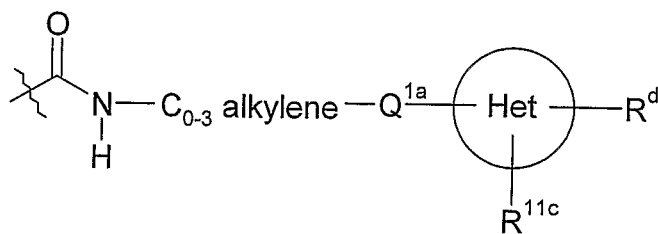
(viii)



(ix)

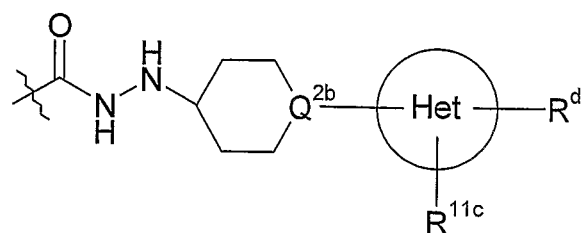


(x)

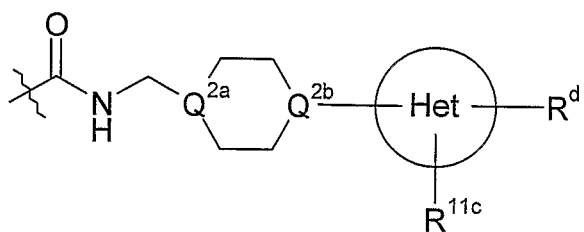


10

(xi)

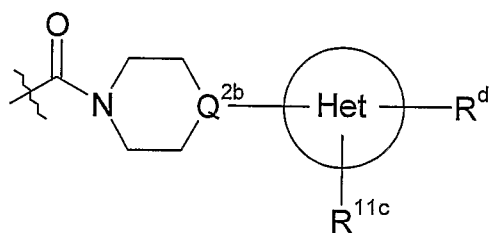


(xii)



5

(xiii)



wherein  $Q^{1a}$  is as defined above;

- (9) Het represents a 5- or 6-membered monocyclic, an 8-membered bicyclic, or a 9- or 10-membered ring-fused bicyclic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), one sulfur or oxygen atom and/or one to three nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group

10

(i) when 5- or 6-membered, is fully aromatic, fully saturated or mono-unsaturated,

(ii) when 8-membered, is fully aromatic or, preferably, fully saturated, or

15

(iii) when 9- or 10-membered, is fully aromatic or part-aromatic;

- (10)  $R^{11a}$  represents H or one to three substituents selected from halo, OH, CN,  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl and  $C_{1-3}$  alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from OH,

halo,  $C(O)OR^{12a}$  and  $C(O)N(R^{12b})R^{12c}$  (e.g. one or more substituents selected from the latter three groups));

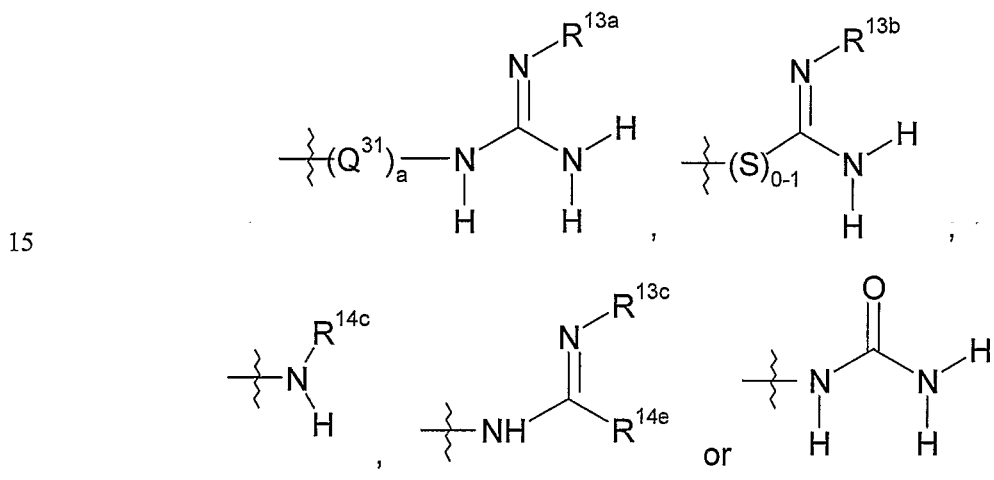
(11)  $R^{11b}$  represents one or two substituents selected from halo and  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl or, preferably,  $R^{11b}$  represents H;

5 (12)  $R^{11c}$  represents H or one to three substituents selected from halo, OH, CN,  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and OH), =O, =NH and =N-CN;

10 (13)  $R^{12a}$  to  $R^{12c}$  independently represent H,  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl (optionally substituted by one  $N(R^{12e})R^{12f}$  group) or  $C_{3-5}$  cycloalkyl (e.g. H,  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl or  $C_{3-5}$  cycloalkyl);

(14)  $R^{12e}$  and  $R^{12f}$  independently represent H or  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl;

(15)  $R^{a1}$ ,  $R^{a2}$  and  $R^{a3}$  represent  $R^a$  as defined above, but preferably independently represent

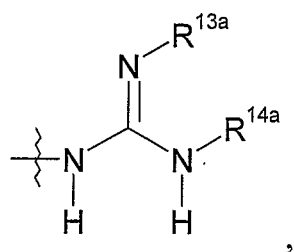


wherein  $Q^{31}$  represents O,  $C(O)$  or  $-CH=N-$  and  $a$  represents 0 or, preferably, 1;

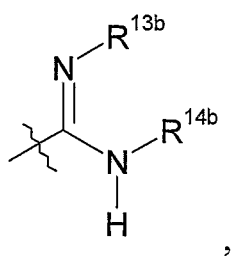
(16)  $R^b$  represents

20 (a) H,

(b)

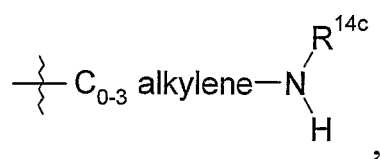


(c)

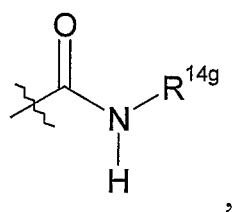


5

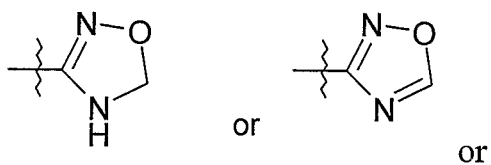
(d)



(e)

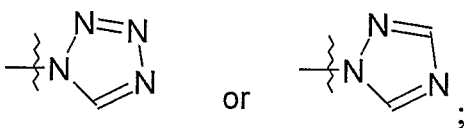


(f)

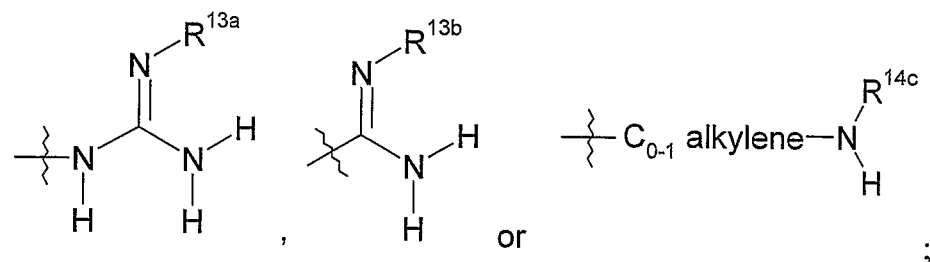


10

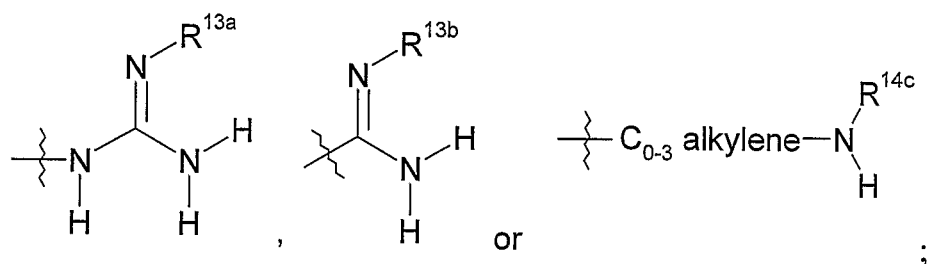
(g)



(17)  $R^c$  represents



(18)  $R^d$  represents H,



5 (19)  $R^{13a}$  represents H, CN,  $NH_2$  or  $OR^{15}$ ;

(20)  $R^{13b}$  represents H,  $NH_2$ ,  $OR^{15}$  or  $C(O)OR^{16}$ ;

(21)  $R^{13c}$  represents H or OH;

(22)  $R^{15}$  represents H or  $C_{1-5}$  alkyl;

(23)  $R^{16}$  represents  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl substituted by aryl;

10 (24)  $R^{10a}$  represents H or  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by OH);

(25)  $R^{14a}$  represents H, methyl,  $C(O)O-C_{3-4}$  alkyl or  $C(O)OCH_2$ -phenyl (e.g. methyl or, preferably, H);

(26)  $R^{14b}$  to  $R^{14d}$  and  $R^{14f}$  to  $R^{14g}$  independently represent methyl or, preferably, H,

15 or  $R^{14c}$  represents

$C_{1-2}$  alkyl substituted by one to three halo (e.g. F) atoms,

$C_{4-5}$  cycloalkyl (e.g. cyclopentyl),

$C(O)O-C_{3-4}$  alkyl or

20  $C(O)OCH_2$ -phenyl (e.g. one of the latter three groups),

or  $R^{14c}$  and  $R^{14d}$  together represent  $C_4$  *n*-alkylene;

(27)  $R^{14e}$  represents H or, preferably, methyl;

(28) each aryl independently represents phenyl or naphthyl, each of which groups may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from

(a) F, Cl, Br,

(b) CN,

5 (c) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from F, Cl, C(O)OH, C(O)OCH<sub>3</sub> and phenyl),

(d) C<sub>3-5</sub> cycloalkyl,

(e) OR<sup>17a</sup>,

10 (f) S-C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl, S(O)<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl (the alkyl parts of which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more F atoms),

(g) S(O)<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(H)CH<sub>3</sub>,

15 (h) N(H)S(O)<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more F atoms),

(i) NH<sub>2</sub>, N(H)C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl,

20 (j) CHO, C(O)-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more F or Cl atoms), C(O)OH, C(O)O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, C(O)NH<sub>2</sub>, C(O)N(H)-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, N(H)C(O)-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, N(H)C(O)O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl,

(k) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one to four substituents selected from F, Cl and Br),

(l) Het<sup>9</sup> and

(m) Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>;

25 (29) R<sup>17a</sup> represents

(a) H,

(b) C<sub>1-5</sub> alkyl optionally substituted by phenyl or one or more substituents selected from F, Cl and Het<sup>10</sup> (e.g. one or more substituents selected from F and Cl),

30 (c) C<sub>3-5</sub> cycloalkyl or

- (d) phenyl optionally substituted by one to four substituents selected from F, Cl and Br;
- (30) Het<sup>1</sup> represents a 5- to 10-membered heterocyclic group containing one to three heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and/or sulfur, which heterocyclic groups may comprise one or two rings and may be substituted by one to three substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, =O and OH;
- (31) Het<sup>3</sup> represents a 5- to 13-membered heterocyclic group containing one to four heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and/or sulfur, which heterocyclic groups may comprise one, two or three rings and may be substituted by one to four substituents selected from
- (a) F, Cl, Br,
  - (b) C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from F, Cl and OH),
  - (c) C<sub>3-5</sub> cycloalkyl,
  - (d) =O,
  - (e) OH, O-C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from F and Cl),
  - (g) S(O)<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more F atoms), S(O)<sub>2</sub>-phenyl (the phenyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by one to four substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, methyl and methoxy),
  - (h) S(O)<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(H)-C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl,
  - (i) N(H)S(O)<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl,
  - (j) NH<sub>2</sub>, N(H)-C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl,
  - (j) C(O)-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, C(O)-phenyl (the phenyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by one to four substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, methyl and methoxy), C(O)OH,

C(O)O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, C(O)NH<sub>2</sub>, C(O)N(H)-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, N(H)C(O)-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, N(H)C(O)O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl,

(l) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one to four substituents selected from F, Cl and Br) and

5 (m) Het<sup>c</sup>;

(32) Het<sup>9</sup> represents a 5- or 6-membered monocyclic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), one sulfur or oxygen atom and/or one to three nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, =O and OH;

10

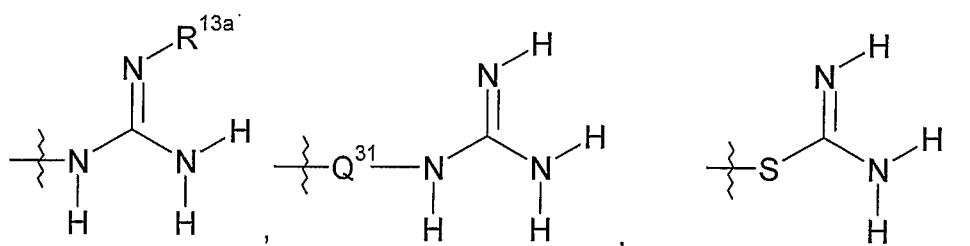
(33) Het<sup>10</sup> represents a 5- or 6-membered monocyclic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), one sulfur or oxygen atom and/or one to three nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy;

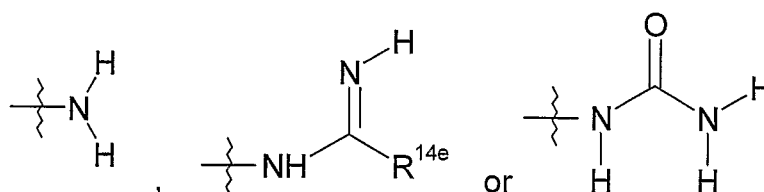
15

(34) Het<sup>c</sup> represents a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), one oxygen or sulfur atom (e.g. one oxygen atom) and/or one to three (e.g. one or two) nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g. one or more substituents selected from F, Cl, Br and methyl).

20

More preferred definitions of R<sup>a1</sup> include



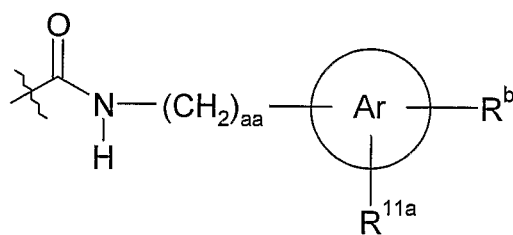


wherein  $R^{13a}$  is as defined above, but preferably represents OH, CN or  $NH_2$  and  $Q^{31}$  and  $R^{14e}$  are as defined above.

- 5 More preferred definitions of  $R^{a2}$  and  $R^{a3}$  include  $-N(H)R^{14c}$ , wherein  $R^{14c}$  represents  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl or, preferably, H.

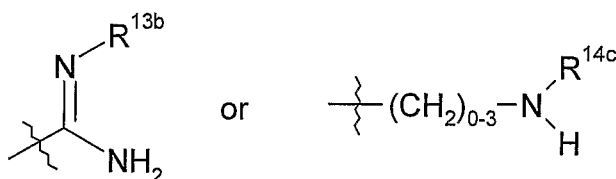
Compounds of formula I that are more preferred still include those in which the group G-L takes any of the following definitions.

10 (1)



wherein aa represents 0, 1 or 2 (such as 2 or, particularly, 1);

$R^b$  is as hereinbefore defined, but particularly represents tetrazol-1-yl, H,



15

(e.g. one of the latter three groups),

wherein  $R^{13b}$  is as hereinbefore defined, but particularly represents  $NH_2$  or, preferably, H;

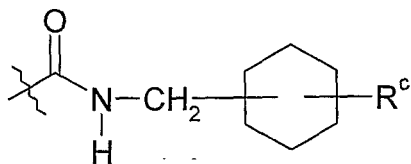
$R^{14c}$  is as hereinbefore defined, but particularly represents  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl optionally substituted by one to 3 F atoms (e.g.  $CH_2CF_3$ ), H, cyclopentyl or  $C(O)O-C_{3-4}$  alkyl (e.g. one of the latter three groups);

20

$R^{11a}$  is as hereinbefore defined, but,

- (i) when  $R^b$  represents H,  $R^{11a}$  particularly represents one to three substituents selected from F, Cl, OH, methyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by OH or, particularly,  $C(O)N(R^{12b})R^{12c}$ ) and methoxy (which latter group is substituted by  $C(O)N(H)R^{12b}$ ),
- (ii) when  $R^b$  represents  $-C(=NR^{13b})NH_2$ ,  $R^{11a}$  particularly represents one or two substituents selected from F and OH or, preferably,  $R^{11a}$  represents H,
- (iii) when  $R^b$  represents  $-(CH_2)_{0-3}-N(H)R^{14c}$ ,  $R^{11a}$  particularly represents H or one or two substituents selected from F, Cl, OH, methyl, methoxy and  $CF_3$  (e.g. H or one or two substituents selected from Cl, OH and methyl or, preferably, a single Cl substituent).

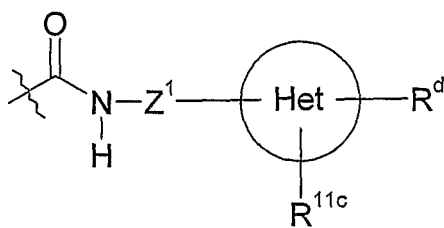
(2)



wherein  $R^c$  represents  $-C(=NR^{13b})NH_2$  or, particularly,  $-N(H)R^{14c}$ , which groups are preferably attached in the 4-position relative to the point of attachment of the  $CH_2$  group;

$R^{13b}$  and  $R^{14c}$  are as hereinbefore defined, but preferably represent H.

(3)



wherein  $Z^1$  represents  $-CH_2C\equiv C-$ ,  $-CH=CH-$ ,  $C(O)CH_2$  or, preferably,  $C(O)$  or  $-(CH_2)_{ab}-$ ;

when  $Z^1$  represents  $-\text{CH}_2\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ , Het represents a 5-membered, aromatic heterocyclic group containing one or, particularly, two nitrogen atoms;

5 when  $Z^1$  represents  $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{CH}_2$ , Het represents a 6-membered, fully saturated heterocyclic group containing one or, particularly, two nitrogen atoms;

when  $Z^1$  represents  $\text{C}(\text{O})$ , Het represents a 6-membered, aromatic heterocyclic group containing two nitrogen atoms or, particularly, one nitrogen atom;

10 when  $Z^1$  represents  $-(\text{CH}_2)_{ab}-$  Het represents a 5- or 6-membered monocyclic or 9- or 10-membered ring-fused bicyclic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s)

(a) a sulfur atom, or

(b) a nitrogen atom and, optionally, one or two further  
15 heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur,

which heterocyclic group

(i) when 5- or 6-membered, is fully aromatic or fully saturated,

(ii) when 9- or 10-membered, is fully aromatic or part-aromatic;

20  $ab$  represents 0 to 3, but preferably represents 1 or 2 or, when Het is 5-membered, also preferably represents 3;

$R^d$  represents H,  $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^{13b})\text{NH}_2$  or  $-\text{N}(\text{H})\text{R}^{14c}$ , but  $R^d$ , when Het is 5 or 10-membered, particularly represents  $-\text{N}(\text{H})\text{R}^{14c}$ ;

$R^{11c}$  is as hereinbefore defined, but preferably represents H or

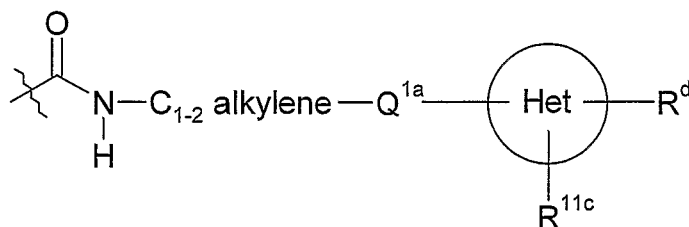
(I) when Het is 6-membered and aromatic (e.g. a pyridinyl  
25 group), one or two substituents selected from F, Cl, methyl and  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ,

(II) when Het is 6-membered and fully saturated, a methyl or a  $=\text{NH}$  substituent;

$R^{13b}$  is as hereinbefore defined, but preferably represents H;

$R^{14c}$  is as hereinbefore defined, but preferably represents H or, when Het is 6-membered, methyl.

(4)



5 wherein  $Q^{1a}$  represents O or  $\text{NR}^{10a}$ ;

$R^{10a}$  represents H, methyl or  $\text{---CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ;

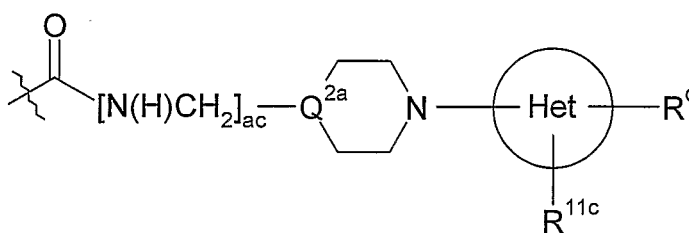
Het represents a 6-membered or 10-membered, aromatic heterocyclic group containing two nitrogen atoms or, preferably, one nitrogen atom;

10  $R^d$  represents H or  $\text{---N(H)R}^{14c}$ ;

$R^{14c}$  is as hereinbefore defined, but preferably represents H;

$R^{11c}$  is as hereinbefore defined, but preferably represents H or, when Het contains two nitrogen atoms, represents Cl.

(5)



15

wherein  $Q^{2a}$  represents N or CH;

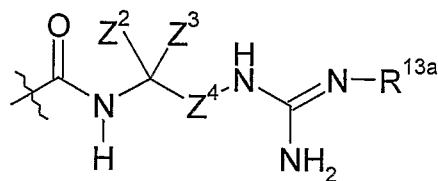
ac represents 0 or 1, but, when  $Q^{2a}$  represents CH, preferably represents 1;

Het represents a 6-membered, aromatic heterocyclic group containing two nitrogen atoms or, preferably, one nitrogen atom (e.g. a pyridinyl group, such as a pyridin-4-yl group);

20

$R^d$  and  $R^{11c}$  are as hereinbefore defined, but preferably represent H;

(6)

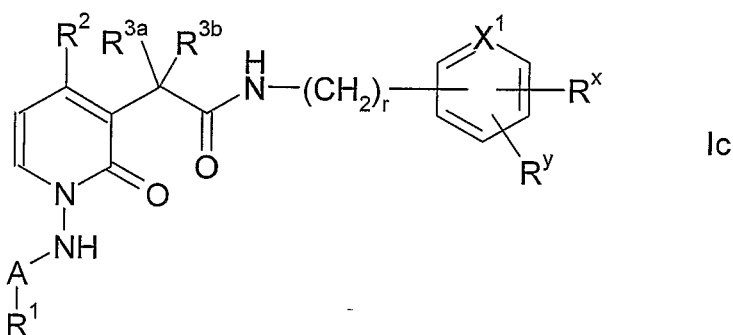


wherein  $Z^2$  and  $Z^3$  independently represent H or F, but, preferably,  $Z^2$  and  $Z^3$  both represent H or both represent F;

$Z^4$  represents  $-(CH_2)_2C(O)-$  or, preferably,  $-CH_2C(O)-$ ,  $-CH_2O-$ ,  $-CH_2-C(H)=N-$  or  $-C(H)=N-$ ;

$R^{13a}$  is as hereinbefore defined, but preferably represents H.

Particularly preferred compounds of the invention are compounds of formula Ic



wherein  $X^1$  represents CH or N;

when  $X^1$  represents CH

(a)  $R^x$  takes the same definitions as  $R^b$  above, and

(b)  $R^y$  takes the same definitions as  $R^{11a}$  above;

when  $X^1$  represents N

(a)  $R^x$  takes the same definitions as  $R^d$  above, and

(b)  $R^y$  takes the same definitions as  $R^{11c}$  above;

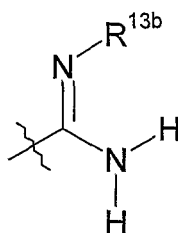
$r$  represents 1 to 3; and

$R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ ,  $R^{11a}$ ,  $R^{11c}$ ,  $R^b$ ,  $R^d$  and A are as defined above,

which compounds are also referred to hereinafter as “the compounds of the invention”.

Preferred compounds of formula Ic include those in which:

- 5 when  $X^1$  represents CH,  $R^x$  represents tetrazol-1-yl, H,  $(CH_2)_{1-2}N(H)R^{14c}$  (e.g.  $CH_2N(H)R^{14c}$ ) or



(e.g. any one of the latter three groups);

when  $X^1$  represents N,  $R^x$  represents H or  $-N(H)R^{14c}$ ;

- 10 when  $X^1$  represents CH,  $R^y$  represents H or one to three substituents selected from halo,  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-2}$  alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more F atoms), OH,  $CH_2OH$  and  $OCH_2C(O)N(H)R^{12b}$  (e.g. H or one to three halo atoms);

when  $X^1$  represents N,  $R^y$  represents H or one to three substituents selected

- 15 from halo and  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl;

$R^{12b}$  represents H or, preferably,  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl optionally substituted by  $N(CH_3)_2$  (e.g. ethyl or  $(CH_2)_{2-3}N(CH_3)_2$ , particularly  $(CH_2)_3N(CH_3)_2$ );

r represents 2 or, particularly, 1.

- 20 Particularly preferred compounds of formula Ic include those in which:

A represents  $C(O)$ ,  $S(O)_2$ ,  $C(O)NH$  (in which latter group the NH moiety is attached to  $R^1$ ) or  $C_{1-3}$  (e.g.  $C_{1-2}$ ) alkylene (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more F atoms (e.g. is unsubstituted));

$R^1$  represents

- 25 (a)  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl substituted by phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected

from halo, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more F atoms)),

(b) phenyl or naphthyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from CN, halo, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more F atoms), O-phenyl, O-CH<sub>2</sub>-Het<sup>10</sup> and Het<sup>9</sup> (e.g. one or more substituents selected from halo, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more F atoms))),

(c) a 5- or 6-membered monocyclic (preferably aromatic) heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), an oxygen or sulfur atom and/or one to three nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group is optionally substituted by one to four substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, =O, OH, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more halo atoms or by OH), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy, S(O)<sub>2</sub>-phenyl, C(O)-phenyl, phenyl and Het<sup>c</sup> (e.g. one to four substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy, such as one to four substituents selected from F, Cl, Br and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl),

(d) a 9- or 10-membered bicyclic (preferably part-aromatic) heterocyclic group containing one to three heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and/or sulfur (e.g. two oxygen atoms), which heterocyclic group is optionally substituted by one to four substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy,

(e) C<sub>1-5</sub> alkyl, or

(f) C<sub>4-7</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5-7</sub> cycloalkenyl, which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more methyl groups

(e.g. R<sup>1</sup> represents a group as defined at (a) to (c) above);

Het<sup>9</sup> represents a 5- or 6-membered monocyclic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), one sulfur or oxygen atom and/or one or two nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group may be substituted by one to three substituents selected from F, Cl and methyl;

- 5 Het<sup>10</sup> represents a 5- or 6-membered monocyclic, aromatic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), one sulfur or oxygen atom and/or one or two nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group may be substituted by one to three substituents selected from F, Cl, methyl and methoxy;

- 10 Het<sup>c</sup> represents a 5- or 6-membered monocyclic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), an oxygen or sulfur atom and/or one or two nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group is optionally substituted by one to four substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy;

R<sup>2</sup> represents H, methyl or halo (such as Cl);

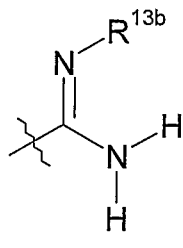
R<sup>3a</sup> and R<sup>3b</sup> both represent H;

- 15 when X<sup>1</sup> represents CH and R<sup>x</sup> represents H, then R<sup>y</sup> represents one to three substituents selected from OH, methyl, CH<sub>2</sub>OH, OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)N(H)R<sup>12b</sup> and halo (particularly one to three halo atoms (e.g. one to three Cl atoms, such as two Cl atoms attached in the 2- and 5-positions relative to the point of attachment of the (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub> group));

- 20 when X<sup>1</sup> represents CH and R<sup>x</sup> represents (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>1-2</sub>N(H)R<sup>14c</sup>, then R<sup>y</sup> represents H or, preferably, one or two substituents selected from halo, C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-2</sub> alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more F atoms) (and particularly R<sup>y</sup> represents one or two halo atoms (e.g. one or two Cl atoms, such as a Cl atom attached in the 3-position relative to the point of attachment of the (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub> group));

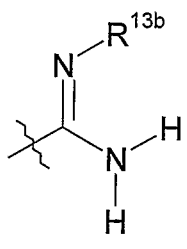
- 25 when X<sup>1</sup> represents CH and R<sup>x</sup> represents tetrazol-1-yl, then R<sup>y</sup> represents one or two halo (e.g. Cl atoms) or, preferably, H;

when  $X^1$  represents CH and  $R^x$  represents



then  $R^y$  represents one or two F atoms or, preferably, H;

when  $X^1$  represents CH, the group



if present, is attached at the 3- or, preferably, the 4-position relative to the point of attachment of the  $(CH_2)_r$  group;

when  $X^1$  represents CH, the group  $(CH_2)_{1-2}N(H)R^{14c}$ , if present, is attached at the 5-position or, preferably, the 6-position relative to the point of attachment of the  $(CH_2)_r$  group;

when  $X^1$  represents CH, the tetrazol-1-yl group, if present, is attached at the 5- or, preferably, the 6-position relative to the point of attachment of the  $(CH_2)_r$  group;

$R^{13b}$  represents OH,  $OCH_3$  or, preferably,  $C(O)OCH_2$ -phenyl or H;

when  $X^1$  represents N and  $R^x$  represents H,  $R^y$  represents H or, preferably, one or two substituents selected from halo (e.g. F) and methyl;

when  $X^1$  represents N and  $R^x$  represents  $-N(H)R^{14c}$ ,  $R^y$  represents H or one or two methyl groups (e.g. H or methyl);

$R^{14c}$  represents  $CH_2CF_3$ , H, cyclopentyl or  $C(O)O-C_4$  alkyl (e.g. one of the latter three groups, such as  $C(O)O-C_4$  alkyl (e.g.  $C(O)O$ -*tert*-butyl) or, preferably, H).

Compounds of formula Ic that are more preferred still include those in which:

A represents C(O), C(O)NH (in which latter group the NH moiety is attached to R<sup>1</sup>) or, particularly, S(O)<sub>2</sub> or C<sub>1-3</sub> (e.g. C<sub>1-2</sub>) alkylene (which latter group is optionally gem-disubstituted by two F atoms (e.g. is unsubstituted));

R<sup>1</sup> represents

- (a) C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl substituted by phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from F, Cl and Br), or
- (b) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, CN, C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-3</sub> alkoxy (which latter group two groups are optionally substituted by one or more F atoms (thus forming, for example, C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl, CF<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1-2</sub> alkoxy or OCF<sub>3</sub>)), O-phenyl, O-CH<sub>2</sub>-Het<sup>10</sup> and Het<sup>9</sup>) (such as one or more substituents selected from F, Cl, Br, C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more F atoms (thus forming, for example, C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl or CF<sub>3</sub>)) and C<sub>1-3</sub> alkoxy (e.g. C<sub>1-2</sub> alkoxy)), or
- (c) naphthyl (e.g. 1-naphthyl), or
- (d) pyridinyl (e.g. pyridin-2-yl or pyridin-3-yl) optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from F, Cl, (N-)oxo, OH, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (such as methyl, which C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl group is optionally substituted by one or more halo atoms or by OH) or, particularly, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g. *tert*-butoxy or methoxy) or Het<sup>c</sup>, (such as pyridinyl (e.g. pyridin-3-yl) optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from F, Cl, C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl or, particularly, C<sub>1-2</sub> alkoxy),

- (e) pyridonyl (e.g. 2-pyridon-3-yl) optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from F, Cl, and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g. methyl);
- (f) pyrazinyl (e.g. pyrazin-2-yl) optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from F, Cl and methyl;
- (g) a 5-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), an oxygen or sulfur atom and/or one to three nitrogen atoms (e.g. imidazolyl, isoxazolyl, pyrazolyl, pyrrolyl, thiazolyl, or thienyl), which heterocyclic group is optionally substituted by one to four (e.g. one to three) substituents selected from F, Cl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g. methyl or ethyl), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g. methoxy), S(O)<sub>2</sub>-phenyl, C(O)-phenyl, phenyl, morpholinyl (e.g. morpholin-4-yl), 1,3,4-triazolyl (e.g. 1,3,4-triazol-1-yl), thienyl (e.g. 2-thienyl) and pyridinyl (e.g. pyridin-2-yl),
- (h) 2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl, benzomorpholinyl, benzodioxanyl, 2,1,3-benzoxadiazolyl, or, particularly, benzodioxolyl or quinolinyl, all of which groups are optionally substituted by one or more (e.g. one to three) substituents selected from F, Cl, C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-2</sub> alkoxy,
- (i) C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g. isopropyl or *tert*-butyl), or
- (j) cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl or C<sub>7</sub> bicyclic cycloalkenyl (e.g. bicyclo[2.2.1]heptene, which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one to four methyl groups
- (e.g. R<sup>1</sup> represents a group as defined at (a) to (d) or, particularly, (a) to (c) above);

Het<sup>9</sup> represents a 6-membered, saturated, monocyclic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), one oxygen atom and/or one or two nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group may be substituted by one or two methyl substituents;

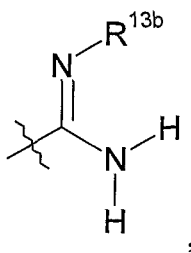
Het<sup>10</sup> represents a 5-membered, monocyclic, aromatic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), one sulfur or oxygen atom and/or one or two nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group may be substituted by one to three substituents selected from Cl and methyl;

- 5 Het<sup>c</sup> represents a 6-membered, saturated, monocyclic heterocyclic group containing, as heteroatom(s), one oxygen atom and/or one or two nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group may be substituted by one or two methyl substituents;

R<sup>2</sup> represents methyl;

- 10 X<sup>1</sup> represents CH or N (e.g. CH);

when X<sup>1</sup> represents CH, R<sup>x</sup> represents



attached at the 4-position relative to the point of attachment of the (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub> group, or R<sup>x</sup> may also represent tetrazol-1-yl or, particularly, CH<sub>2</sub>N(H)R<sup>14c</sup>

- 15 (which latter two groups are attached, for example, in the 6-position relative to the point of attachment of the (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub> group);

R<sup>x</sup> may alternatively represent H when X<sup>1</sup> represents CH and R<sup>y</sup> represents one to three substituents selected from OH, methyl, CH<sub>2</sub>OH, OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)N(H)R<sup>12b</sup> and halo;

- 20 R<sup>13b</sup> represents C(O)OCH<sub>2</sub>-phenyl or, preferably, H;

R<sup>14c</sup> represents C(O)O-*tert*-butyl or, particularly, H, ethyl, CH<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub> or cyclopentyl (e.g. H or cyclopentyl).

Other preferred compounds of formula Ia include those in which:

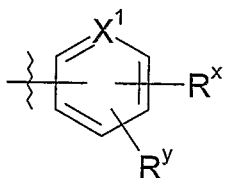
A represents  $\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2$  (in which latter group the  $\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)$  unit is attached to  $\text{R}^1$ ) or, particularly,  $\text{CH}_2$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_2$  or  $\text{CF}_2\text{CH}_2$  (in which latter group the  $\text{CF}_2$  unit is attached to  $\text{R}^1$ );

5  $\text{R}^1$  represents

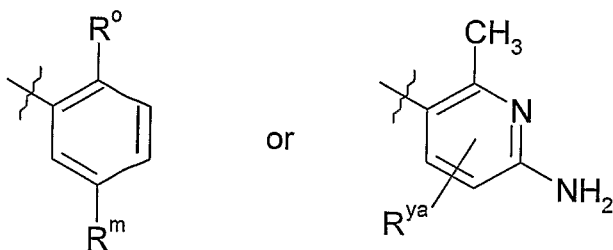
- (a) isopropyl or *tert*-butyl,
- (b) cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl or bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-ene,
- (c) phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from halo (e.g. F or Cl), CN, methyl,  $\text{CF}_3$ , methoxy,  
10  $\text{OCF}_3$ , phenoxy, morpholin-4-yl or O- $\text{CH}_2$ -(2-chlorothiazol-5-yl),
- (d) imidazolyl optionally substituted by one to three substituents selected from Cl, methyl and phenyl,
- (e) isoxazolyl (e.g. isoxazol-3-yl or isoxazol-4-yl) optionally  
15 substituted by one or two substituents selected from methyl, phenyl and 2-thienyl,
- (f) thiazolyl (e.g. thiazol-5-yl) optionally substituted by one or two methyl groups,
- (g) thienyl (e.g. thien-2-yl) optionally substituted by Cl or  
20 pyridinyl (e.g. pyridin-2-yl),
- (h) pyrazolyl (e.g. pyrazol-4-yl) optionally substituted by one to three substituents selected from Cl, methyl, ethyl, phenyl and morpholin-4-yl,
- (i) pyrrolyl (e.g. pyrrol-2-yl or pyrrol-3-yl) optionally substituted  
25 by one to three substituents selected from methyl,  $\text{S}(\text{O})_2$ -phenyl,  $\text{C}(\text{O})$ -phenyl and 1,3,4-triazol-1-yl,
- (j) pyridinyl (e.g. pyridin-2-yl or pyridin-3-yl) optionally substituted by OH, methoxy or morpholin-4-yl, and optionally in the form of an *N*-oxide,
- 30 (k) pyridonyl (e.g. 2-pyridon-3-yl),

- (l) pyrazinyl (e.g. pyrazin-2-yl),  
 (m) benzodioxolyl (e.g. 5-benzodioxolyl) optionally substituted by halo (e.g. Cl),  
 (n) benzomorpholinyl (e.g. 7-benzomorpholinyl) optionally substituted by methyl;  
 (o) 2,1,3-benzoxadiazolyl (e.g. 2,1,3-benzoxadiazol-5-yl),  
 (p) 2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl (e.g. 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl) or  
 (q) quinolinyl (e.g. 8-quinolinyl);

the group



represents



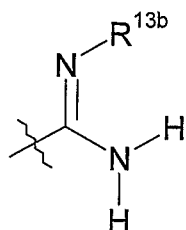
$R^0$  represents H, F, Cl, OH, methyl or, particularly, tetrazol-1-yl,  $OCH_2C(O)N(H)R^{12b}$  or  $CH_2N(H)R^{14c}$ ;

$R^m$  represents H, methyl,  $CF_3$ , methoxy, F or, particularly, Cl (for example:

- (a) when  $R^0$  represents H or Cl, then  $R^m$  represents Cl;  
 (b) when  $R^0$  represents OH or methyl, then  $R^m$  represents F or, particularly Cl; and  
 (c) when  $R^0$  represents tetrazol-1-yl,  $OCH_2C(O)N(H)R^{12b}$  or  $CH_2N(H)R^{14c}$  then  $R^m$  represents H, methyl,  $CF_3$ , methoxy, F or, most preferably, Cl);

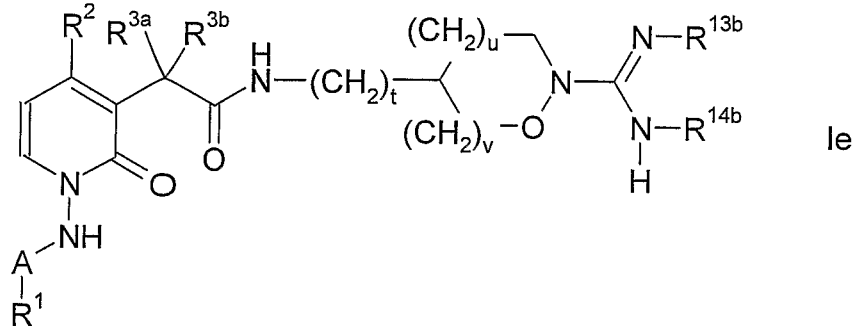
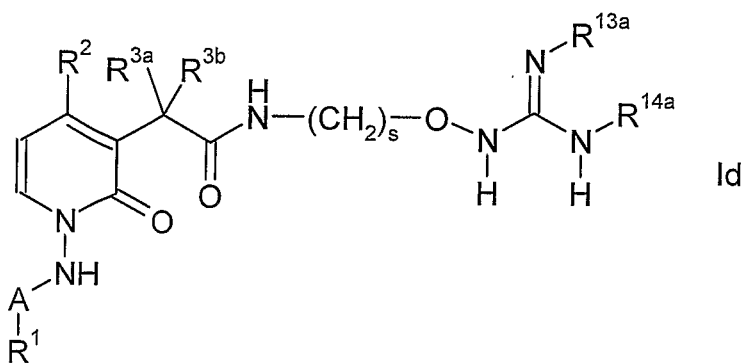
$R^{ya}$  represents H or, particularly, methyl.

In one embodiment of compounds of formula Ic that are more preferred still,  $R^x$  represents



5 attached at the 4-position relative to the point of attachment of the  $(CH_2)_r$  group.

Particularly preferred compounds of the invention are also compounds of formulae Id and Ie



10 wherein  $s$  represents 2 to 4;

$t$  represents 1 to 3;

$u$  and  $v$  independently represent 0 to 2, the sum of  $u$  and  $v$  being 1 or 2; and

$R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ ,  $R^{13a}$ ,  $R^{13b}$ ,  $R^{14a}$  and  $R^{14b}$  are as defined above,

which compounds are also referred to hereinafter as “the compounds of the invention”.

Preferred compounds of formula Id include those in which:

- 5 s represents 3 or, particularly, 2;  
 $R^{13a}$  and  $R^{14a}$  both represent H.

Preferred compounds of formula Ie include those in which:

- t represents 2 or, particularly, 1;  
 10 u and v both represent 1;  
 $R^{13b}$  and  $R^{14b}$  both represent H.

For the avoidance of doubt, the preferred definitions of groups given above in relation to compounds of formula Ic, Id and Ie are also, where relevant,  
 15 preferred definitions of the equivalent groups in compounds of formula I.

Preferred compounds of the invention include the compounds of the Examples disclosed hereinafter.

## 20 Preparation

Compounds of formula I (including compounds of formula Ic, Id and Ie) may be made in accordance with techniques well known to those skilled in the art, for example as described hereinafter.

25

According to a further aspect of the invention there is provided a process for the preparation of a compound of formula I, which comprises:

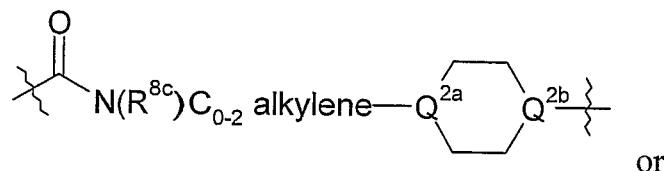
(a) for compounds of formula I in which the group G represents

- 30 (i)  $C(O)N(R^{8a})-[CH(C(O)R^9)]_{0-1}-C_{0-3} \text{ alkylene}-(Q^1)_a-$ ,

64

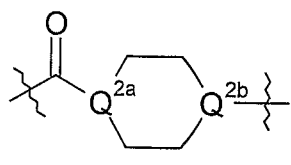
(ii)  $C(O)N(R^{8b})-C_{2-3}$  alkenylene- $(Q^1)_a-$ ,(iii)  $C(O)N(R^{8b})-C_{2-3}$  alkynylene- $(Q^1)_a-$ ,

(iv)

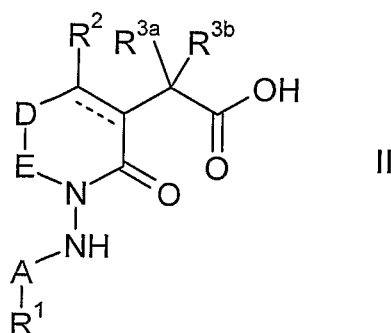


5

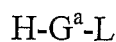
(v)

wherein  $Q^{2a}$  represents N or NHCH,

coupling of a compound of formula II,



10 wherein the dashed line,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ , A, D and E are as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of formula III,



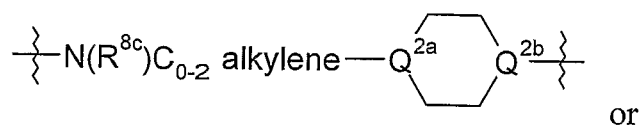
III

wherein L is as hereinbefore defined and  $G^a$  represents(i)  $-N(R^{8a})-[CH(C(O)R^9)]_{0-1}-C_{0-3}$  alkylene- $(Q^1)_a-$ ,

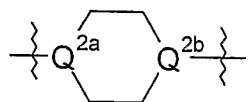
15

(ii)  $-N(R^{8b})-C_{2-3}$  alkenylene- $(Q^1)_a-$ ,(iii)  $-N(R^{8b})-C_{2-3}$  alkynylene- $(Q^1)_a-$ ,

(iv)

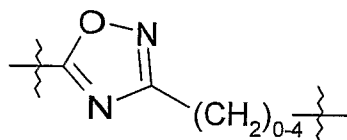


(v)

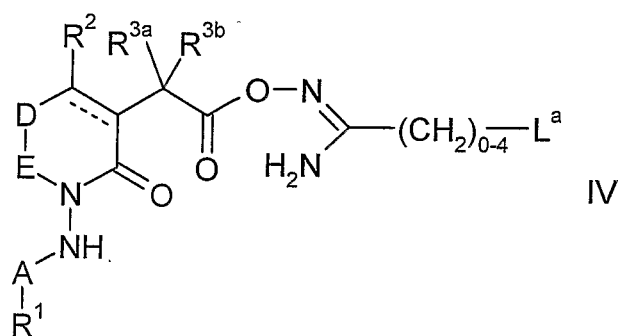


wherein  $Q^{2a}$  represents N or NHCH and  $R^{8a}$ ,  $R^{8b}$ ,  $R^{8c}$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $Q^1$ ,  $Q^{2b}$  and  $a$  are as hereinbefore defined,

- 5 for example in the presence of a coupling agent (e.g. oxalyl chloride in DMF, EDC, DCC, HBTU, HATU, PyBOP or TBTU), an appropriate base (e.g. pyridine, DMAP, TEA, 2,4,6-collidine or DIPEA) and a suitable organic solvent (e.g. dichloromethane, acetonitrile, EtOAc or DMF);
- 10 (b) for compounds of formula I in which G represents



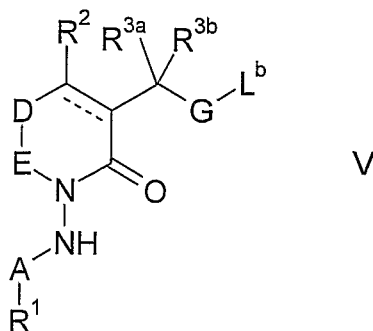
and L represents  $L^a$ , which latter group represents L as hereinbefore defined, except that it does not represent  $C_0$  alkylene- $R^a$ , cyclisation of a compound of formula IV,



15

- wherein the dashed line,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ , A, D, E and  $L^a$  are as hereinbefore defined, for example at elevated temperature (e.g. 60°C to reflux) in the presence of a suitable solvent (e.g. pyridine, toluene, 1,4-dioxane or THF) and optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst (e.g.  $(n\text{-Bu})_4\text{NF}$ , which
- 20 may particularly be employed when the reaction solvent is THF);

(c) for compounds of formula I in which  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$ ,  $R^c$  or  $R^d$  represents  $-C(=NH)NH_2$ ,  $-C(=NNH_2)NH_2$  or  $-C(=NOH)NH_2$ , reaction of a compound of formula V,



5 wherein  $L^b$  represents L as hereinbefore defined, except that  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$ ,  $R^c$  or  $R^d$  (as appropriate) is replaced by a cyano or  $-C(=NH)O-C_{1-4}$  alkyl group, and the dashed line,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ , A, D, E and G are as hereinbefore defined, with a suitable source of ammonia, hydrazine or hydroxylamine (e.g. ammonia gas, ammonium acetate, hydrazine, hydrazine monohydrochloride, hydroxylamine or hydroxylamine hydrochloride) under conditions  
10 known to those skilled in the art (e.g. conditions such as those described in *Tetrahedron Lett.* 40, 7067 (1999)), for example from ambient (e.g. 15 to 25°C) to elevated temperature (e.g. 60°C to reflux) in the presence of a suitable solvent (e.g. ethanol);

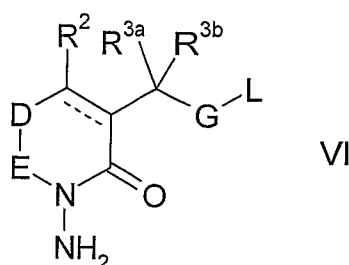
15

(d) for compounds of formula I in which  $R^{13a}$ ,  $R^{13b}$  or  $R^{13c}$  represents H, deprotection of a corresponding compound of formula I in which  $R^{13a}$ ,  $R^{13b}$  or  $R^{13c}$  (as appropriate) represents  $C(O)O-CH_2$ aryl (e.g.  $C(O)O$ -benzyl), for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (such as  
20 hydrogenation in the presence of an appropriate catalyst (e.g. Pt/C or, particularly, Pd/C), a suitable solvent (e.g. an alcohol such as ethanol or, particularly, methanol) and, optionally, an acid (e.g. HCl));

(e) for compounds of formula I in which  $R^{14c}$  represents H, deprotection of a  
25 corresponding compound of formula I in which  $R^{14c}$  represents

C(O)O-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (e.g. C(O)O-*tert*-butyl), for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g. acid or base hydrolysis, such as, for deprotection of compounds in which R<sup>14c</sup> represents C(O)O-*tert*-butyl, reaction with HCl gas in the presence of a suitable solvent (e.g. an alcohol  
 5 such as ethanol or, particularly, methanol) , or reaction with trifluoroacetic acid at sub-ambient temperature (e.g. 0 to 4°C), optionally in the presence of a suitable solvent such as DCM);

(f) reaction of a compound of formula VI,



10

wherein the dashed line, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3a</sup>, R<sup>3b</sup>, A, D, E, G and L are as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of formula VII,



wherein Lg<sup>1</sup> represents a suitable leaving group (e.g. halo, trifluoromethanesulfonate or OH) and R<sup>1</sup> and A are as hereinbefore defined,  
 15 for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (such as at sub-ambient temperature (e.g. 0°C) in the presence of an appropriate base (e.g. K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> or pyridine) and a suitable solvent (e.g. DCM));

20 (g) for compounds of formula I in which A represents C(O)NH, reaction of a compound of formula VI, as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of formula VIII,



wherein R<sup>1</sup> is as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions known  
 25 to those skilled in the art (such as at ambient temperature (e.g. 15 to 25°C) in the presence of a suitable solvent (e.g. DCM));

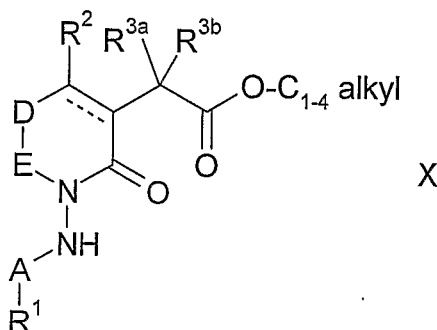
(h) for compounds of formula I in which A represents C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylene, reaction of a compound of formula VI, as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of formula IX,



- 5 wherein R<sup>1</sup> is as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (such as at reflux in the presence of a suitable solvent (e.g. ethanol), followed by reduction in the presence of a reducing agent (e.g. NaBH<sub>3</sub>CN), for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g. at ambient temperature (such as 15 to 25°C) in the presence  
10 of a suitable solvent (such as ethanol); or

- (i) for compounds of formula I in which R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup>, R<sup>c</sup> or R<sup>d</sup> represents -C(=NCN)NH<sub>2</sub>, reaction of a corresponding compound of formula I in which R<sup>a</sup>, R<sup>b</sup>, R<sup>c</sup> or R<sup>d</sup>, respectively, represents -C(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub> with  
15 cyanogen bromide, for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g. in the presence of a suitable base (such as an alkali metal alkoxide like sodium ethoxide) and an appropriate solvent (such as a lower alkyl alcohol like ethanol).

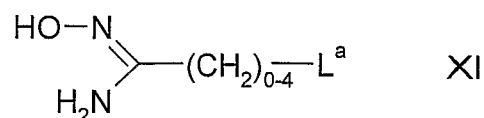
- 20 Compounds of formula II may be prepared by hydrolysis of a compound of formula X,



- wherein the dashed line, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3a</sup>, R<sup>3b</sup>, A, D and E are as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g.  
25 by basic hydrolysis in the presence of an alkali metal hydroxide (e.g. LiOH

or, particularly, NaOH) and a suitable solvent (e.g. water, THF, methanol or a mixture thereof)).

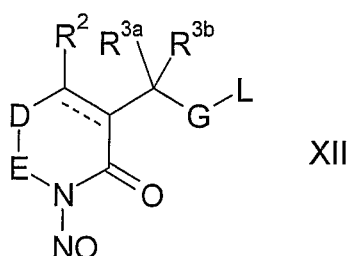
Compounds of formula IV may be prepared by the coupling of a compound  
5 of formula II, as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of formula XI,



wherein  $\text{L}^a$  is as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions well know to those skilled in the art (e.g. those described in WO 01/79262, such as at ambient temperature (e.g. 15 to 25°C) in the presence of a coupling  
10 agent (e.g. EDC) and a suitable solvent (e.g. DMF)).

As the skilled person will appreciate, in some instances, compounds of formula V are identical to certain compounds of formula I (e.g. compounds in which  $\text{R}^b$ ,  $\text{R}^c$  or  $\text{R}^d$  represents H and  $\text{R}^{11a}$ ,  $\text{R}^{11b}$  or  $\text{R}^{11c}$ , respectively,  
15 represents CN). In this respect, compounds of formula V may be prepared by analogy with the procedures described herein for the preparation of compounds of formula I.

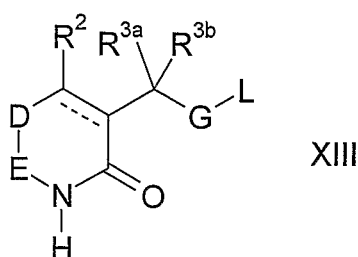
Compounds of formula VI may be prepared by reduction of a compound of  
20 formula XII,



wherein the dashed line,  $\text{R}^2$ ,  $\text{R}^{3a}$ ,  $\text{R}^{3b}$ , D, E, G and L are as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions that are well known to those skilled in the art (such as by reaction with zinc metal (e.g. zinc powder or iron

metal powder) in the presence of an appropriate acid (e.g. acetic acid or hydrochloric acid) and optionally in the presence of a suitable solvent (e.g. methanol)).

- 5 Compounds of formula VI may alternatively be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula XIII,



- wherein the dashed line,  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ , D, E, G and L are as hereinbefore defined, with *O*-(diphenylphosphinyl)hydroxylamine, for example under  
 10 conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g. at ambient temperature (such as 15 to 25°C) in the presence of an appropriate base (such as  $\text{Cs}_2\text{CO}_3$ ) and a suitable solvent (such as DMF)).

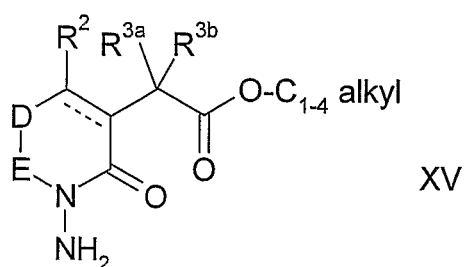
- Compounds of formula IX may be prepared by oxidation of an alcohol of  
 15 formula XIV,



- wherein  $R^1$  is as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art, such as reaction with PCC, oxalyl chloride and DMSO (Swern oxidation) or, particularly, Dess-Martin periodinane in the  
 20 presence of a suitable solvent (such as DCM).

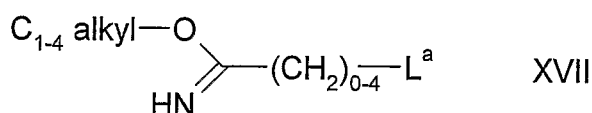
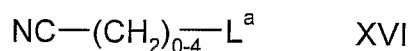
Compounds of formula X may be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula XV,

71



wherein the dashed line,  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ , D and E are as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of formula VII, VIII or IX as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g. conditions described at process steps (f), (g) and (h) above in respect of compounds of formula I).

Compounds of formula XI may be prepared by methods well known to those skilled in the art. For example, compounds of formula XI may be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula XVI or XVII,

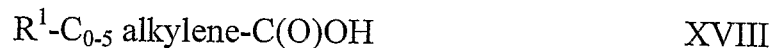


wherein  $\text{L}^a$  is as hereinbefore defined, with hydroxylamine or an acid addition salt thereof, for example under conditions described at process step (c) above in respect of compounds of formula I.

Compounds of formula XII may be prepared by analogy with compounds of formulae I and XIX.

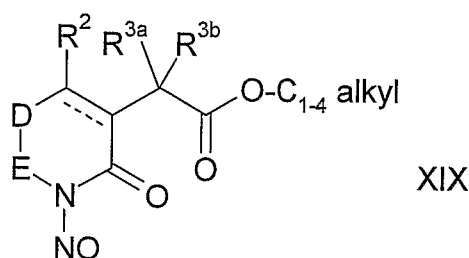
Compounds of formula XIII may be prepared by analogy with compounds of formulae I and XX.

Compounds of formula XIV may be prepared by reduction of a carboxylic acid of formula XVIII,



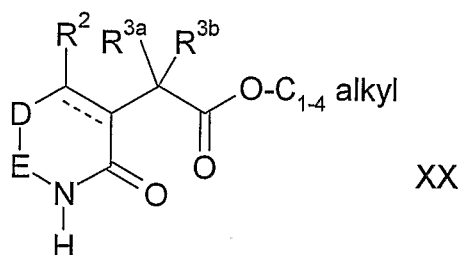
wherein  $\text{R}^1$  is as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art, such as reaction with  $\text{LiAlH}_4$  or, particularly, borane in the presence of a suitable solvent (such as THF).

Compounds of formula XV may be prepared by reduction of a compound of formula XIX,



wherein the dashed line,  $\text{R}^2$ ,  $\text{R}^{3a}$ ,  $\text{R}^{3b}$ , D and E are as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions described hereinbefore in respect of the preparation of compounds of formula VI.

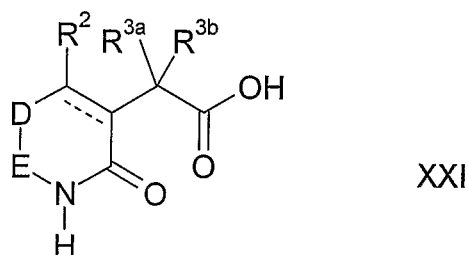
Compounds of formula XV may alternatively be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula XX,



wherein the dashed line,  $\text{R}^2$ ,  $\text{R}^{3a}$ ,  $\text{R}^{3b}$ , D and E are as hereinbefore defined, with *O*-(diphenylphosphinyl)hydroxylamine, for example under conditions described hereinbefore in respect of the preparation of compounds of formula VI.

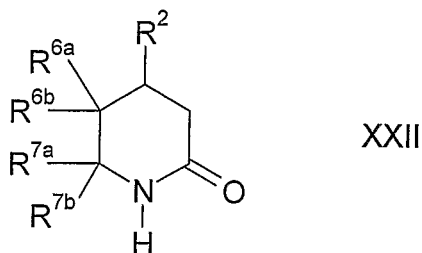
Compounds of formula XIX may be prepared by nitrosation of a corresponding compound of formula XX, as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions well known to those skilled in the art, e.g. reaction at with a nitrosating agent (such as nitrous acid, NOCl, N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub> or, particularly, a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl nitrite (e.g. *tert*-butyl nitrite)) in the presence of  
 5 a suitable solvent (e.g. diethyl ether) and optionally in the presence of an appropriate base (e.g. pyridine).

Compounds of formula XX may be prepared by esterification of a  
 10 compound of formula XXI,



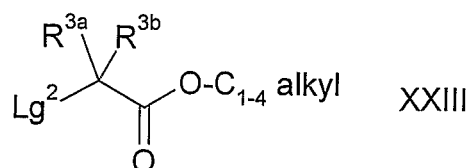
wherein R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3a</sup>, R<sup>3b</sup>, D and E are as hereinbefore defined, in the presence of a C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl alcohol, for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g. by esterification in the presence of an appropriate acid (e.g. HCl) and a suitable solvent (e.g. a C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl alcohol (such as methanol),  
 15 water, or a mixture thereof)).

Compounds of formula XX in which the dashed line is absent may alternatively be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula XXII,

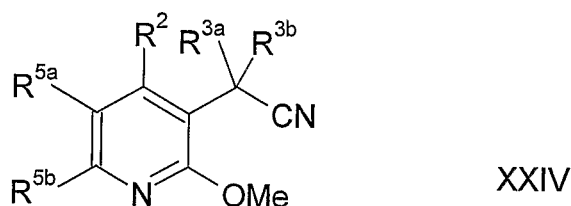


or a protected derivative thereof, wherein R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>6a</sup>, R<sup>6b</sup>, R<sup>7a</sup> and R<sup>7b</sup> are as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of formula XXIII,

74

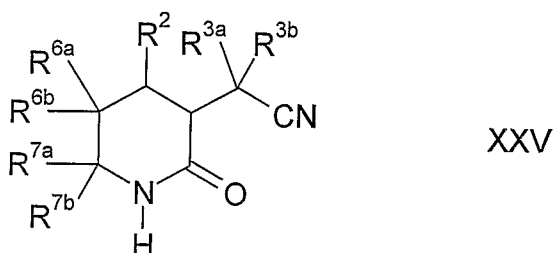


- wherein Lg<sup>2</sup> represents a suitable leaving group (e.g. halo or OS(O)<sub>2</sub>R', wherein R' represents, for example, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> perfluoroalkyl, phenyl, toluyll or benzyl) and R<sup>3a</sup> and R<sup>3b</sup> are as hereinbefore defined, in the presence of an appropriate base (e.g. a metal hydride or, particularly, a metal amide (such as lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide)), for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g. at low temperature (such as -78 to -10°C)) in the presence of a suitable solvent (such as THF)).
- 10 Compounds of formula XXI in which the dashed line represents a bond may be prepared by hydrolysis of a compound of formula XXIV,



- wherein R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3a</sup>, R<sup>3b</sup>, R<sup>5a</sup> and R<sup>5b</sup> are as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g. by refluxing in concentrated HBr).
- 15

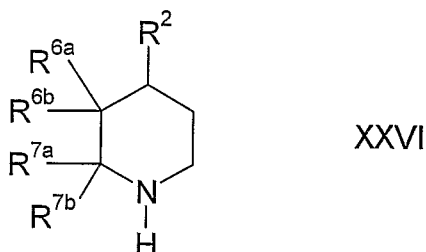
Compounds of formula XXI in which the dashed line is absent may be prepared by hydrolysis of a compound of formula XXV



- 20 wherein R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3a</sup>, R<sup>3b</sup>, R<sup>6a</sup>, R<sup>6b</sup>, R<sup>7a</sup> and R<sup>7b</sup> are as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g. those

mentioned above in relation to compounds of formula XXI in which the dashed line represents a bond).

Compounds of formula XXII may be prepared by oxidation of a compound  
5 of formula XXVI,

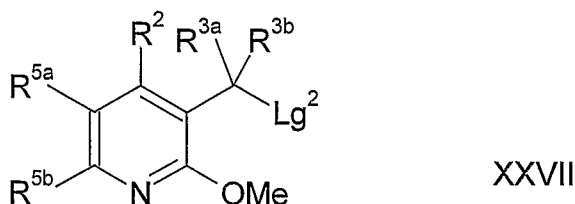


or a protected derivative thereof, wherein  $R^2$ ,  $R^{6a}$ ,  $R^{6b}$ ,  $R^{7a}$  and  $R^{7b}$  are as hereinbefore defined, with a suitable oxidising agent (e.g.  $H_2O_2$ ,  $(PhIO)_n$ ,  $Hg(OAc)_2$  or, particularly,  $RuO_4$ , which latter reagent may be formed *in situ*  
10 by oxidation of  $RuO_2$  (e.g. by an excess of  $NaIO_4$ )), for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g. at ambient temperature (such as 15 to 25°C) in the presence of a suitable solvent (such as ethyl acetate, water or a mixture thereof)).

15 As the skilled person will appreciate, the conversion of compounds of formula XXVI to corresponding compounds of formula XX may require, at any or all of the reaction steps, protection of the N-H group of the piperidone ring system. Suitable protective groups for this purpose include benzyloxycarbonyl and, particularly, *tert*-butyloxycarbonyl. The protective  
20 group may be introduced and removed under conditions that are well known to those skilled in the art. The protective group may be conveniently introduced before the compound of formula XXVI is converted to the compound of XXII (e.g. by reaction, under conditions that are well known to those skilled in the art, of a compound of XXVI with di-*tert*-  
25 butyldicarbonate). Further, the protective group may be conveniently removed, again under conditions that are well known to those skilled in the

art (e.g. by reaction with trifluoroacetic acid), once the compound of formula XX has been formed.

Compounds of formula XXIV may be prepared by reaction of a compound  
5 of formula XXVII,



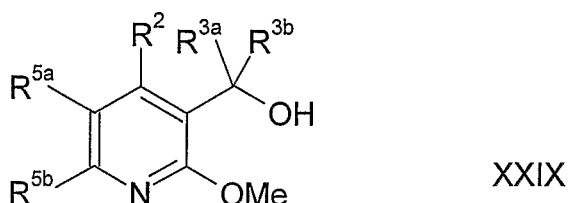
wherein  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ ,  $R^{5a}$ ,  $R^{5b}$  and  $Lg^2$  are as hereinbefore defined, with a suitable source of the cyanide ion (e.g. KCN), for example under conditions that are known to those skilled in the art (e.g. at ambient temperature (such  
10 as 15 to 25°C) in the presence of a suitable solvent (such as methanol)).

Compounds of formula XXV may be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula XXII, as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of formula XXVIII,



wherein  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$  and  $Lg^2$  are as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions known to those skilled in the art (e.g. the conditions described above in respect of the preparation of compounds of formula XX).

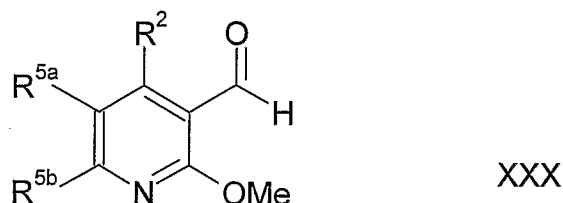
20 Compounds of formula XXVII in which  $Lg^2$  represents halo may be prepared by halogenation of a compound of formula XXIX,



wherein  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ ,  $R^{5a}$  and  $R^{5b}$  are as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions that are known to those skilled in the art (e.g. by reaction with triphenylphosphine and an *N*-halosuccinimide (such as NBS) in the presence of a suitable solvent (such as DCM)).

5

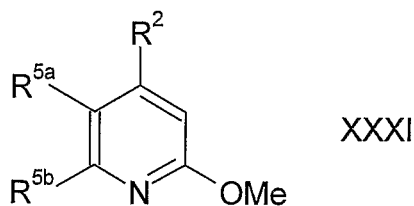
Compounds of formula XXIX in which  $R^{3a}$  and  $R^{3b}$  both represent H may be prepared by reduction of a corresponding compound of formula XXX,



wherein  $R^2$ ,  $R^{5a}$  and  $R^{5b}$  are as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions that are known to those skilled in the art (e.g. by reaction with sodium borohydride in the presence of a suitable solvent (such as methanol, THF or a mixture thereof)).

Compounds of formula XXX may be prepared by formylation of a corresponding compound of formula XXXI,

15



wherein  $R^2$ ,  $R^{5a}$  and  $R^{5b}$  are as hereinbefore defined, for example under conditions that are known to those skilled in the art (e.g. by reaction with a suitable source of the formyl group (such as DMF) in the presence of an appropriate base (such as *tert*-butyllithium or mesityllithium (which latter reagent may be formed *in situ* by reaction between *tert*-butyllithium and bromomesitylene)).

20

Compounds of formulae III, VII, VIII, XVI, XVII, XVIII, XXIII, XXVI, XXVIII and XXX are either commercially available, are known in the literature, or may be obtained by analogy with the processes described herein, or by conventional synthetic procedures, in accordance with standard techniques, from readily available starting materials using appropriate reagents and reaction conditions. In this respect, compounds described herein may also be obtained by analogy with synthetic procedures described in the prior art documents mentioned above (and WO 94/20467, WO 94/29336, WO 95/23609, WO 96/06832, WO 96/06849, WO 97/11693, WO 97/24135, WO 98/01422, WO 01/68605, WO 99/26920, WO 01/79155, WO 01/68605, WO 96/18644, WO 97/01338, WO 97/30708, WO 98/16547, WO 99/26926, WO 00/73302, WO 01/04117, WO 01/79262, WO 02/064140, WO 02/057225, WO 03/29224, US 5,668,289, US 5,792,779 and WO 95/35313 in particular).

15

Substituents on alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl and heterocyclic groups in compounds of formulae I, II, IV, V, VI, X, XII, XIII, XV, XIX, XX, XXI, XXII, XXIV, XXV, XXVI, XXVII, XXIX, XXX and XXXI may be introduced and/or interconverted using techniques well known to those skilled in the art by way of standard functional groups interconversions, in accordance with standard techniques, from readily available starting materials using appropriate reagents and reaction conditions. For example, hydroxy may be converted to alkoxy, phenyl may be halogenated to give halophenyl, halo may be displaced by cyano, etc.

25

The skilled person will also appreciate that various standard substituent or functional group interconversions and transformations within certain compounds of formula I will provide other compounds of formula I. For example, hydroxyamidino may be reduced to amidino.

30

Compounds of formula I may be isolated from their reaction mixtures using conventional techniques.

In accordance with the present invention, pharmaceutically acceptable  
5 derivatives of compounds of formula I also include “protected” derivatives, and/or compounds that act as prodrugs, of compounds of formula I.

Compounds that may act as prodrugs of compounds of formula I that may be mentioned include compounds of formula I in which  $R^{13a}$ ,  $R^{13b}$  or  $R^{13c}$  is  
10 other than H or  $R^{14c}$  represents  $C(O)O-C_{1-6}$  alkyl, the alkyl part of which group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms (e.g. compounds in which  $R^{14c}$  represents  $C(O)O$ -*tert*-butyl).

The compounds of the invention may exhibit tautomerism. All tautomeric  
15 forms and mixtures thereof are included within the scope of the invention. Particular tautomeric forms that may be mentioned include those connected with the position of the double bond in the amidine or guanidine functionalities that the groups  $R^a$  to  $R^d$  may represent.

20 Compounds of the invention may also contain one or more asymmetric carbon atoms and may therefore exhibit optical and/or diastereoisomerism. Diastereoisomers may be separated using conventional techniques, e.g. chromatography. The various stereoisomers may be isolated by separation of a racemic or other mixture of the compounds using conventional, e.g.  
25 HPLC techniques. Alternatively the desired optical isomers may be made by reaction of the appropriate optically active starting materials under conditions which will not cause racemisation or epimerisation, or by derivatisation, for example with a homochiral acid followed by separation of the diastereomeric derivatives by conventional means (e.g. HPLC,

chromatography over silica). All stereoisomers are included within the scope of the invention.

It will be appreciated by those skilled in the art that in the processes  
5 described above and hereinafter the functional groups of intermediate compounds may need to be protected by protecting groups.

Functional groups that it is desirable to protect include hydroxy, amino and carboxylic acid. Suitable protecting groups for hydroxy include optionally  
10 substituted and/or unsaturated alkyl groups (e.g. methyl, allyl, benzyl or *tert*-butyl), trialkylsilyl or diarylalkylsilyl groups (e.g. *t*-butyldimethylsilyl, *t*-butyldiphenylsilyl or trimethylsilyl) and tetrahydropyranyl. Suitable protecting groups for carboxylic acid include C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or benzyl esters. Suitable protecting groups for amino and amidino include *t*-  
15 butyloxycarbonyl, benzyloxycarbonyl or 2-trimethylsilylethoxycarbonyl (Teoc). Amidino nitrogens may also be protected by hydroxy or alkoxy groups, and may be either mono- or diprotected.

The protection and deprotection of functional groups may take place before  
20 or after coupling, or before or after any other reaction in the above-mentioned schemes.

Protecting groups may be removed in accordance with techniques that are well known to those skilled in the art and as described hereinafter.

25

Persons skilled in the art will appreciate that, in order to obtain compounds of the invention in an alternative, and, on some occasions, more convenient, manner, the individual process steps mentioned hereinbefore may be performed in a different order, and/or the individual reactions may be  
30 performed at a different stage in the overall route (i.e. substituents may be

added to and/or chemical transformations performed upon, different intermediates to those mentioned hereinbefore in conjunction with a particular reaction). This may negate, or render necessary, the need for protecting groups.

5

The type of chemistry involved will dictate the need, and type, of protecting groups as well as the sequence for accomplishing the synthesis.

The use of protecting groups is fully described in "Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry", edited by J W F McOmie, Plenum Press (1973), and  
10 "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis", 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, T.W. Greene & P.G.M. Wutz, Wiley-Interscience (1999).

Protected derivatives of compounds of the invention may be converted  
15 chemically to compounds of the invention using standard deprotection techniques (e.g. hydrogenation). The skilled person will also appreciate that certain compounds of formula I (e.g. compounds in which  $R^{13a}$ ,  $R^{13b}$  or  $R^{13c}$  is other than H) may also be referred to as being "protected derivatives" of other compounds of formula I (e.g. those in which  $R^{13a}$ ,  $R^{13b}$  or  $R^{13c}$   
20 represents H).

Those skilled in the art will also appreciate that certain compounds of formula I will be useful as intermediates in the synthesis of certain other compounds of formula I.

25

Some of the intermediates referred to hereinbefore are novel. According to a further aspect of the invention there is thus provided: (a) a compound of formula II, or a protected derivative thereof; (b) a compound of formula IV, or a protected derivative thereof; (c) a compound of formula V, or a protected  
30 derivative thereof; (d) a compound of formula VI, or a protected derivative

thereof; (e) a compound of formula X, or a protected derivative thereof; (f) a compound of formula XII, or a protected derivative thereof; (g) a compound of formula XV, or a protected derivative thereof; and (h) a compound of formula XIX, or a protected derivative thereof.

5

### Medical and pharmaceutical use

Compounds of the invention may possess pharmacological activity as such. However, other compounds of the invention (including compounds of formula I in which  $R^{13a}$ ,  $R^{13b}$  or  $R^{13c}$  is other than H or  $R^{14c}$  represents C(O)O-*tert*-butyl) may not possess such activity, but may be administered parenterally or orally, and may thereafter be metabolised in the body to form compounds that are pharmacologically active (including, but not limited to, corresponding compounds of formula I in which  $R^{13a}$ ,  $R^{13b}$ ,  $R^{13c}$  or  $R^{14c}$  represents H). Such compounds (which also includes compounds that may possess some pharmacological activity, but that activity is appreciably lower than that of the "active" compounds to which they are metabolised), may therefore be described as "prodrugs" of the active compounds.

Thus, the compounds of the invention are useful because they possess pharmacological activity, and/or are metabolised in the body following oral or parenteral administration to form compounds which possess pharmacological activity. The compounds of the invention are therefore indicated as pharmaceuticals.

25

According to a further aspect of the invention there is thus provided the compounds of the invention for use as pharmaceuticals.

In particular, compounds of the invention are potent inhibitors of thrombin either as such and/or (e.g. in the case of prodrugs), are metabolised

30

following administration to form potent inhibitors of thrombin, for example as may be demonstrated in the tests described below.

By “prodrug of a thrombin inhibitor”, we include compounds that form a  
5 thrombin inhibitor, in an experimentally-detectable amount, and within a predetermined time (e.g. about 1 hour), following oral or parenteral administration (see, for example, Test E below) or, alternatively, following incubation in the presence of liver microsomes (see, for example, Test F below).

10

The compounds of the invention are thus expected to be useful in those conditions where inhibition of thrombin is beneficial (as determined by reference to a clinically relevant end-point, e.g. conditions, such as thrombo-embolisms, where inhibition of thrombin is required or desired,  
15 and/or conditions where anticoagulant therapy is indicated), including the following:

20

The treatment and/or prophylaxis of thrombosis and hypercoagulability in blood and/or tissues of animals including man. It is known that  
hypercoagulability may lead to thrombo-embolic diseases. Conditions associated with hypercoagulability and thrombo-embolic diseases are usually designated as thrombophilia conditions. These conditions include, but are not limited to, inherited or acquired activated protein C resistance, such as the factor V-mutation (factor V Leiden), inherited or acquired  
25 deficiencies in antithrombin III, protein C, protein S, heparin cofactor II, and conditions with increased plasma levels of the coagulation factors such as caused by the prothrombin G20210A mutation. Other conditions known to be associated with hypercoagulability and thrombo-embolic disease include circulating antiphospholipid antibodies (Lupus anticoagulant),  
30 homocysteinemi, heparin induced thrombocytopenia and defects in

fibrinolysis, as well as coagulation syndromes (e.g. disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)) and vascular injury in general (e.g. due to trauma or surgery). Furthermore, low physical activity, low cardiac output or high age are known to increase the risk of thrombosis and  
5 hypercoagulability may be just one of several factors underlying the increased risk. These conditions include, but are not limited to, prolonged bed rest, prolonged air travelling, hospitalisation for an acute medical disorder such as cardiac insufficiency or respiratory insufficiency. Further conditions with increased risk of thrombosis with hypercoagulability as one  
10 component are pregnancy and hormone treatment (e.g. oestrogen).

The treatment of conditions where there is an undesirable excess of thrombin without signs of hypercoagulability, for example in neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's disease.

15

Particular disease states which may be mentioned include the therapeutic and/or prophylactic treatment of venous thrombosis (e.g. deep venous thrombosis, DVT) and pulmonary embolism, arterial thrombosis (e.g. in myocardial infarction, unstable angina, thrombosis-based stroke and  
20 peripheral arterial thrombosis), and systemic embolism usually from the atrium during atrial fibrillation (e.g. non-valvular or valvular atrial fibrillation) or from the left ventricle after transmural myocardial infarction, or caused by congestive heart failure; prophylaxis of re-occlusion (i.e. thrombosis) after thrombolysis, percutaneous trans-luminal angioplasty  
25 (PTA) and coronary bypass operations; the prevention of thrombosis after microsurgery and vascular surgery in general.

Further indications include the therapeutic and/or prophylactic treatment of disseminated intravascular coagulation caused by bacteria, multiple trauma,  
30 intoxication or any other mechanism; anticoagulant treatment when blood is

in contact with foreign surfaces in the body such as vascular grafts, vascular stents, vascular catheters, mechanical and biological prosthetic valves or any other medical device; and anticoagulant treatment when blood is in contact with medical devices outside the body such as during cardiovascular surgery using a heart-lung machine or in haemodialysis; the therapeutic and/or prophylactic treatment of idiopathic and adult respiratory distress syndrome, pulmonary fibrosis following treatment with radiation or chemotherapy, chronic obstructive lung disease, septic shock, septicemia, inflammatory responses, which include, but are not limited to, edema, acute or chronic atherosclerosis such as coronary arterial disease and the formation of atherosclerotic plaques, cardiac insufficiency, cerebral arterial disease, cerebral infarction, cerebral thrombosis, cerebral embolism, peripheral arterial disease, ischaemia, angina (including unstable angina), reperfusion damage, restenosis after percutaneous trans-luminal angioplasty (PTA) and coronary artery bypass surgery.

Compounds of the invention that inhibit trypsin and/or thrombin may also be useful in the treatment of pancreatitis.

The compounds of the invention are thus indicated both in the therapeutic and/or prophylactic treatment of these conditions.

According to a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a method of treatment of a condition where inhibition of thrombin is required which method comprises administration of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of the invention to a person suffering from, or susceptible to, such a condition.

The compounds of the invention will normally be administered orally, intravenously, subcutaneously, buccally, rectally, dermally, nasally,

tracheally, bronchially, by any other parenteral route or *via* inhalation, in the form of pharmaceutical preparations comprising compound of the invention either as a free base, or a pharmaceutically acceptable non-toxic organic or inorganic acid addition salt, in a pharmaceutically acceptable dosage form.

5

Preferred route of administration of compounds of the invention are oral.

Depending upon the disorder and patient to be treated and the route of administration, the compositions may be administered at varying doses.

10

The compounds of the invention may also be combined and/or co-administered with any antithrombotic agent(s) with a different mechanism of action, such as one or more of the following: the anticoagulants unfractionated heparin, low molecular weight heparin, other heparin derivatives, synthetic heparin derivatives (e.g. fondaparinux), vitamin K antagonists, synthetic or biotechnological inhibitors of other coagulation factors than thrombin (e.g. synthetic FXa, FVIIa and FIXa inhibitors, and rNAPc2), the antiplatelet agents acetylsalicylic acid, ticlopidine and clopidogrel; thromboxane receptor and/or synthetase inhibitors; fibrinogen receptor antagonists; prostacyclin mimetics; phosphodiesterase inhibitors; ADP-receptor (P2X<sub>1</sub>, P2Y<sub>1</sub>, P2Y<sub>12</sub> [P<sub>2</sub>T]) antagonists; and inhibitors of carboxypeptidase U (CPU or TAFIa) and inhibitors of plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1).

25 The compounds of the invention may further be combined and/or co-administered with thrombolytics such as one or more of tissue plasminogen activator (natural, recombinant or modified), streptokinase, urokinase, prourokinase, anisoylated plasminogen-streptokinase activator complex

(APSAC), animal salivary gland plasminogen activators, and the like, in the treatment of thrombotic diseases, in particular myocardial infarction.

According to a further aspect of the invention there is thus provided a  
5 pharmaceutical formulation including a compound of the invention, in admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable adjuvant, diluent or carrier.

Suitable daily doses of the compounds of the invention in therapeutic treatment of humans are about 0.001-100 mg/kg body weight at peroral  
10 administration and 0.001-50 mg/kg body weight at parenteral administration.

For the avoidance of doubt, as used herein, the term "treatment" includes therapeutic and/or prophylactic treatment.

15

Compounds of the invention have the advantage that they may be more efficacious, be less toxic, be longer acting, have a broader range of activity, be more selective (e.g. for inhibiting thrombin over other serine proteases, in particular trypsin and those involved in haemostasis), be more potent,  
20 produce fewer side effects, be more easily absorbed, and/or have a better pharmacokinetic profile (e.g. higher oral bioavailability and/or lower clearance), than, and/or have other useful pharmacological, physical, or chemical, properties over, compounds known in the prior art.

## 25 **Biological Tests**

The following test procedures may be employed.

## Test A

### Determination of Thrombin Clotting Time (TT)

The inhibitor solution (25 µL) is incubated with plasma (25 µL) for three minutes. Human thrombin (T 6769; Sigma Chem. Co or Hematologic  
5 Technologies) in buffer solution, pH 7.4 (25 µL, 4.0 NIH units/mL), is then added and the clotting time measured in an automatic device (KC 10; Amelung).

The thrombin clotting time (TT) is expressed as absolute values (seconds)  
10 as well as the ratio of TT without inhibitor (TT<sub>0</sub>) to TT with inhibitor (TT<sub>i</sub>). The latter ratios (range 1-0) are plotted against the concentration of inhibitor (log transformed) and fitted to sigmoidal dose-response curves according to the equation

$$y = a/[1+(x/IC_{50})^s]$$

15 where: a = maximum range, i.e. 1; s = slope of the dose-response curve; and IC<sub>50</sub> = the concentration of inhibitor that doubles the clotting time. The calculations are processed on a PC using the software program GraFit Version 3, setting equation equal to: Start at 0, define end = 1 (Erithacus Software, Robin Leatherbarrow, Imperial College of Science, London, UK).

20

## Test B

### Determination of Thrombin Inhibition with a Chromogenic, Robotic Assay

The thrombin inhibitor potency is measured with a chromogenic substrate method, in a Plato 3300 robotic microplate processor (Rosys AG, CH-8634  
25 Hombrechtikon, Switzerland), using 96-well, half volume microtitre plates (Costar, Cambridge, MA, USA; Cat No 3690). Stock solutions of test substance in DMSO (72 µL), 0.1 - 1 mmol/L, are diluted serially 1:3 (24 + 48 µL) with DMSO to obtain ten different concentrations, which are analysed as samples in the assay. 2 µL of test sample is diluted with 124 µL  
30 assay buffer, 12 µL of chromogenic substrate solution (S-2366,

Chromogenix, Mölndal, Sweden) in assay buffer and finally 12  $\mu\text{L}$  of  $\alpha$ -thrombin solution (Human  $\alpha$ -thrombin, Sigma Chemical Co. or Hematologic Technologies) in assay buffer, are added, and the samples mixed. The final assay concentrations are: test substance  
5 0.00068 - 133  $\mu\text{mol/L}$ , S-2366 0.30 mmol/L,  $\alpha$ -thrombin 0.020 NIHU/mL. The linear absorbance increment during 40 minutes incubation at 37°C is used for calculation of percentage inhibition for the test samples, as compared to blanks without inhibitor. The  $\text{IC}_{50}$ -robotic value, corresponding to the inhibitor concentration which causes 50% inhibition of  
10 the thrombin activity, is calculated from a log concentration vs. % inhibition curve.

### Test C

#### Determination of the Inhibition Constant $K_i$ for Human Thrombin

15  $K_i$ -determinations are made using a chromogenic substrate method, performed at 37°C on a Cobas Bio centrifugal analyser (Roche, Basel, Switzerland). Residual enzyme activity after incubation of human  $\alpha$ -thrombin with various concentrations of test compound is determined at three different substrate concentrations, and is measured as the change in  
20 optical absorbance at 405 nm.

Test compound solutions (100  $\mu\text{L}$ ; normally in buffer or saline containing BSA 10 g/L) are mixed with 200  $\mu\text{L}$  of human  $\alpha$ -thrombin (Sigma Chemical Co) in assay buffer (0.05 mol/L Tris-HCl pH 7.4, ionic strength 0.15  
25 adjusted with NaCl) containing BSA (10 g/L), and analysed as samples in the Cobas Bio. A 60  $\mu\text{L}$  sample, together with 20  $\mu\text{L}$  of water, is added to 320  $\mu\text{L}$  of the substrate S-2238 (Chromogenix AB, Mölndal, Sweden) in assay buffer, and the absorbance change ( $\Delta A/\text{min}$ ) is monitored. The final concentrations of S-2238 are 16, 24 and 50  $\mu\text{mol/L}$  and of thrombin 0.125  
30 NIH U/mL.

The steady state reaction rate is used to construct Dixon plots, i.e. diagrams of inhibitor concentration vs.  $1/(\Delta A/\text{min})$ . For reversible, competitive inhibitors, the data points for the different substrate concentrations typically form straight lines which intercept at  $x = -K_i$ .

5

#### Test D

#### Determination of Activated Partial Thromboplastin Time (APTT)

APTT is determined in pooled normal human citrated plasma with the reagent PTT Automated 5 manufactured by Stago. The inhibitors are added  
10 to the plasma (10  $\mu\text{L}$  inhibitor solution to 90  $\mu\text{L}$  plasma) and incubated with the APTT reagent for 3 minutes followed by the addition of 100  $\mu\text{L}$  of calcium chloride solution (0.025 M) and APTT is determined by use of the coagulation analyser KC10 (Amelung) according to the instructions of the reagent producer.

15

The clotting time is expressed as absolute values (seconds) as well as the ratio of APTT without inhibitor ( $\text{APTT}_0$ ) to APTT with inhibitor ( $\text{APTT}_i$ ). The latter ratios (range 1-0) are plotted against the concentration of inhibitor (log transformed) and fitted to sigmoidal dose-response curves according to  
20 the equation

$$y = a/[1+(x/\text{IC}_{50})^s]$$

where:  $a$  = maximum range, i.e. 1;  $s$  = slope of the dose-response curve; and  $\text{IC}_{50}$  = the concentration of inhibitor that doubles the clotting time. The calculations are processed on a PC using the software program GraFit  
25 Version 3, setting equation equal to: Start at 0, define end = 1 (Erithacus Software, Robin Leatherbarrow, Imperial College of Science, London, UK).  $\text{IC}_{50}\text{APTT}$  is defined as the concentration of inhibitor in human plasma that doubled the Activated Partial Thromboplastin Time.

Test EDetermination of Plasma Clearance and Oral Bioavailability in Rat

Plasma clearance and oral bioavailability are estimated in female Sprague Dawley rats. The compound is dissolved in water or another appropriate vehicle. For determination of plasma clearance the compound is administered as a subcutaneous (sc) or an intravenous (iv) bolus injection at a dose of 1-4  $\mu\text{mol/kg}$ . Blood samples are collected at frequent intervals up to 24 hours after drug administration. For bioavailability estimates, the compound is administered orally at 10  $\mu\text{mol/kg}$  via gavage and blood samples are collected frequently up to 24 hours after dosing. The blood samples are collected in heparinized tubes and centrifuged within 30 minutes, in order to separate the plasma from the blood cells. The plasma is transferred to plastic vials with screw caps and stored at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  until analysis. Prior to the analysis, the plasma is thawed and 50  $\mu\text{L}$  of plasma samples are precipitated with 150  $\mu\text{L}$  of cold acetonitrile. The samples are centrifuged for 20 minutes at 4000 rpm. 75  $\mu\text{L}$  of the supernatant is diluted with 75  $\mu\text{L}$  of 0.2% formic acid. 10  $\mu\text{L}$  volumes of the resulting solutions are analysed by LC-MS/MS and the concentrations of thrombin inhibitor are determined using standard curves. All pharmacokinetic calculations are performed with the computer program WinNonlinTMProfessional (Pharsight Corporation, California, USA), or an equivalent program. Area under the plasma concentration-time profiles (AUC) is estimated using the log/linear trapezoidal rule and extrapolated to infinite time. Plasma clearance (CL) of the compound is then determined as

$$\text{CL} = \text{Dose}(\text{iv/sc}) / \text{AUC}(\text{iv/sc}).$$

The oral bioavailability is calculated as

$$F = \text{CL} \times \text{AUC}(\text{po}) / \text{Dose}(\text{po}).$$

Plasma clearance is reported as  $\text{mL/min/kg}$  and oral bioavailability as percentage (%).

## Test F

### Determination of *in vitro* Stability

Liver microsomes are prepared from Sprague-Dawley rats and human liver samples according to internal SOPs. The compounds are incubated at 37°C at a total microsome protein concentration of 0.5 mg/mL in a 0.1 mol/L potassium phosphate buffer at pH 7.4, in the presence of the cofactor, NADPH (1.0 mmol/L). The initial concentration of compound is 1.0 µmol/L. Samples are taken for analysis at 5 time points, 0, 7, 15, 20 and 30 minutes after the start of the incubation. The enzymatic activity in the collected sample is immediately stopped by adding an equal volume of acetonitrile containing 0.8% formic acid. The concentration of compound remaining in each of the collected samples is determined by means of LC-MS/MS. The elimination rate constant (k) of the thrombin inhibitor is calculated as the slope of the plot of ln[Thrombin inhibitor] against incubation time (minutes). The elimination rate constant is then used to calculate the half-life ( $T_{1/2}$ ) of the thrombin inhibitor, which is subsequently used to calculate the intrinsic clearance (CL<sub>int</sub>) of the thrombin inhibitor in liver microsomes as:

$$CL_{int} \text{ (in } \mu\text{l/min/mg)} = \frac{(\ln 2 \times \text{incubation volume})}{(T_{1/2} \times \text{protein concentration})}$$

20

## Test G

### Venous Thrombosis Model

The thrombogenic stimuli are vessel damage and blood flow stasis. Rats are anaesthetised and the abdomen is opened. A partial occlusion on the caval vein, caudal to the left kidney-vein, is obtained with a snare around the vein and a cannula, which is then removed. A filter-paper soaked with FeCl<sub>3</sub> is placed on the external surface of the distal part of the caval vein. The abdomen is filled with saline and closed. At the end of the experiment

the rat is sacrificed, the caval vein is extirpated, the thrombus harvested and its wet weight determined.

#### General Experimental Details

- 5 Where Prep-HPLC is stated, either a Waters Fraction Lynx Purification System with a ACE C8 5 $\mu$ m 21x100 mm column or a Gilson HPLC System with a kromasil C8 10  $\mu$ m 21.2x250 mm column was used. The mobile phase used with the Waters system was a gradient starting at 5% acetonitrile up to 100% in 100 mM ammonium acetate buffer. The mobile phase used
- 10 with the Gilson system was a gradient starting at 0% acetonitrile up to 95% in 100 mM ammonium acetate buffer. The flow rate was 25 mL/minute. With the Waters system, MS triggered fraction collection was used. With the Gilson HPLC system, UV triggered fraction collection was used.
- 15 Mass spectra were recorded on either a Micromass ZQ single quadrupole or a Micromass quattro micro, both equipped with a pneumatically assisted electrospray interface (LC-MS).

#### Reagents

- 20 The following lists of reagents were used in the Preparations and Examples below. Unless otherwise stated, each of these reagents is commercially available.

#### List 1

- 25 (a) Phenylmethanesulfonyl chloride  
(b) Benzenesulfonyl chloride  
(c) 4-Methoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride  
(d) 2-Methoxy-4-methylbenzenesulfonyl chloride  
(e) 3,4-Dichlorobenzenesulfonyl chloride

- (f) 3-Methoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride
- (g) 2,5-Dimethylbenzenesulfonyl chloride
- (h) Naphthalene-1-sulfonyl chloride
- (i) 2,4-Dimethoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride
- 5 (j) (4-Chlorophenyl)methanesulfonyl chloride
- (k) 4-Ethylbenzenesulfonyl chloride
- (l) 2,5-Dimethylthiophene-3-sulfonyl chloride
- (m) 2,5-Dichlorobenzenesulfonyl chloride
- (n) 2-Chloro-6-methylbenzenesulfonyl chloride
- 10 (o) 4-Chloro-2-fluorobenzenesulfonyl chloride

List 2

- (a) Phenylacetic acid
- (b) *o*-Tolylacetic acid
- 15 (c) (2,5-Dimethylphenyl)acetic acid
- (d) (5-Fluoro-2-methylphenyl)acetic acid
- (e) (3-Trifluoromethylphenyl)acetic acid
- (f) (5-Chloro-2-fluorophenyl)acetic acid

20 List 3

- (a) Benzaldehyde
- (b) 3-Methoxybenzaldehyde
- (c) 3-Pyridinecarboxaldehyde
- (d) 2-Methoxynicotinaldehyde
- 25 (obtainable as described in *J. Org. Chem.* 55, 69 (1990))

List 4

- (a) Isobutyraldehyde
- (b) 1-Phenyl-1H-pyrazole-5-carbaldehyde
- 30 (c) 2,5-Dimethyl-1-(4H-1,2,4-triazol-4-yl)-1H-pyrrole-3-carbaldehyde

- (d) 4-Benzoyl-1-methyl-1H-pyrrole-2-carbaldehyde
- (e) 2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b]furan-5-carboxaldehyde
- (f) 2,4-Dimethyl-1,3-thiazole-5-carbaldehyde
- (g) 1,5-Dimethyl-1H-pyrazole-4-carbaldehyde
- 5 (h) 1-(Phenylsulfonyl)-1H-pyrrole-2-carbaldehyde
- (i) 3,5-Dimethyl-4-isoxazolecarbaldehyde
- (j) 5-Chloro-2-phenyl-3H-imidazole-4-carbaldehyde
- (k) 1,3-Dihydro-2,1,3-benzoxadiazole-5-carbaldehyde
- (l) 2-Pyrazinecarboxaldehyde
- 10 (m) Cyclopentanecarboxaldehyde
- (n) 5-Pyridin-2-ylthiophene-2-carbaldehyde
- (o) 5-Chloro-1,3-dimethyl-1H-pyrazole-4-carbaldehyde
- (p) 6-Chloropiperonal
- (q) 1-Methyl-1H-imidazole-2-carbaldehyde
- 15 (r) Cyclohexanecarboxaldehyde
- (s) 4-Methyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-1,4-benzoxazine-7-carbaldehyde
- (t) 4-Cyanobenzaldehyde
- (u) 2-Phenoxybenzaldehyde
- (v) 1-Ethyl-3-methyl-1H-pyrazole-4-carbaldehyde
- 20 (w) 5-Methylimidazole-4-carboxaldehyde
- (x) 5-Chloro-1-methyl-3-phenyl-1H-pyrazole-4-carbaldehyde
- (y) 2-Morpholin-4-yl-pyridine-3-carbaldehyde
- (z) 3,3-Dimethylbutyraldehyde
- (aa) 5-Chloro-2-thiophenecarboxaldehyde
- 25 (ab) 2-Fluoro-5-formylbenzonitrile
- (ac) 5-Methyl-3-phenyl-4-isoxazolecarbaldehyde
- (ad) 3-(Trifluoromethoxy)benzaldehyde
- (ae) 5-Chloro-2-fluorobenzaldehyde
- (af) 2-Methyl-1H-imidazole-5-carbaldehyde
- 30 (ag) 2-Fluoro-5-methoxybenzaldehyde

- (ah) 2-Morpholinobenzaldehyde  
(ai) 1,3-Dimethyl-5-morpholino-1H-pyrazole-4-carbaldehyde  
(aj) 8-Quinolinecarbaldehyde  
(ak) 5-(2-Thienyl)-3-isoxazolecarbaldehyde  
5 (al) 2-Phenylpropionaldehyde  
(am) Bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-ene-2-carbaldehyde  
(an) 3-[(2-Chloro-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methoxy]benzenecarbaldehyde  
(ao) 3-Methyl-5-phenyl-4-isoxazolecarbaldehyde  
(ap) 1,3-Dimethyl-5-morpholin-4-yl-1H-pyrazole-4-carbaldehyde

10

List 5

- (a) [(4-Aminomethylphenyl)iminomethyl]carbamic acid benzyl ester  
(obtainable as described in WO 94/29336)  
(b) (5-Aminomethyl-6-methylpyridin-2-yl)carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester  
15 (obtainable as described in WO 97/01338)  
(c) (4-Aminomethylpyridin-2-yl)carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester  
(obtainable as described in Preparation 3 below)  
(d) (4-Bromomethylpyridin-2-yl)carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester  
(obtainable as described in WO 00/66557)  
20 (e) *C*-(3-Fluoro-4-methylpyridin-2-yl)methylamine  
(obtainable as described in WO 00/075134)  
(f) (5-Aminomethylpyridin-2-yl)carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester  
(obtainable as described in WO 97/01338)  
(g) (2-Aminomethyl-4-chlorobenzyl)carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester  
25 (obtainable as described in WO 02/050056)  
(h) [*N,N'*-Di(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)]2-aminoethoxyguanidine  
(obtainable as described in WO 99/55355)  
(i) (5-Aminomethyl-6-methylpyridin-2-yl)carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester  
(obtainable as described in WO 97/01338)  
30 (j) *tert*-Butyl [5-(aminomethyl)-4,6-dimethylpyridin-2-yl]carbamate

- (obtainable as described in WO 97/01338)
- (k) [2-(1*H*-Tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl]amine  
(obtainable as described in WO 02/064211)
- (l) 5-(Aminomethyl)-3,6-dimethylpyridin-2-amine  
5 (obtainable as described in WO 99/11267)
- (m) *tert*-Butyl [2-(aminomethyl)benzyl]carbamate  
(obtainable as described in WO 02/057225)
- (n) [5-Chloro-2-(1*H*-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl]amine  
(obtainable as described in WO 02/064559)
- 10 (o) 2-[2-(Aminomethyl)-4-chlorophenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide  
(obtainable as described in WO 97/30708)
- (p) *tert*-Butyl {2-[2-(aminomethyl)-4-chlorophenyl]ethyl}carbamate  
(obtainable as described in *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 13, 34773 (2003))
- (q) *tert*-Butyl [2-(aminomethyl)-4-fluorobenzyl]carbamate  
15 (obtainable as described in Preparation 6 below)
- (r) *tert*-Butyl [2-(aminomethyl)-4-methoxybenzyl]carbamate  
(obtainable as described in Preparation 7 below)
- (s) *tert*-Butyl [2-(aminomethyl)-4-methylbenzyl]carbamate  
(obtainable as described in Preparation 8 below)
- 20 (t) *tert*-Butyl [2-(aminomethyl)-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]carbamate  
(obtainable as described in Preparation 9 below)

## Preparations

### Preparation 1

#### (1-Amino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetic acid methyl ester

5

#### (a) 2-Methoxy-4-methyl-pyridine-3-carbaldehyde

The subtitle compound was prepared from 2-methoxypyridine according to the procedures described in *J. Org. Chem.* 55, 69 (1990) and *Tetrahedron Lett.* 29, 773 (1988).

10

#### (b) (2-Methoxy-4-methyl-pyridin-3-yl)methanol

Sodium borohydride (540 mg, 14.2 mmol) was added to a solution of 2-methoxy-4-methylpyridine-3-carbaldehyde (1.8 g, 12.9 mmol; see step (a) above) in a mixture of THF and methanol (30 mL, 1:1) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Water (10 mL) was added and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 25 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 40% ethyl acetate in hexane) to give the sub-title compound (1.68 g, 85%) as a colourless oil.

15

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.17 (s, 3H), 3.68 (br s, 1H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 4.49 (s, 2H), 6.53 (d, 1H), 7.72 (d, 1H)

#### (c) 3-Bromomethyl-2-methoxy-4-methylpyridine

Triphenylphosphine (2.35 g, 13.2 mmol) and *N*-bromosuccinimide (3.46 g, 13.2 mmol) was added to a solution of (2-Methoxy-4-methylpyridin-3-yl)-methanol (1.35 g, 8.81 mmol; see step (b) above) in DCM (40 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. Water (20 mL) was added, the layers were separated and the aqueous layer was

25

extracted with DCM (3 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. Purification by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 10% ethyl acetate in hexane) gave the sub-title compound (1.43 g, 75%) as a colourless oil.

5 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.38 (s, 3H), 4.00 (s, 3H), 4.58 (s, 2H), 6.74 (d, 1H), 7.98 (d, 1H)

(d) (2-Methoxy-4-methylpyridin-3-yl)acetonitrile

Potassium cyanide (633 mg, 9.70 mmol) was added to a solution of 3-bromomethyl-2-methoxy-4-methylpyridine (1.40 g, 6.48 mmol; see step (c) above) in methanol (40 mL) and the solution was stirred for 12 hours at room temperature. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was partitioned between a solution of NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (sat., 10 mL) and ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 15 25 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. Purification by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 25% ethyl acetate in hexane) gave the sub-title compound (0.95 g, 90%) as a colourless oil.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.35 (s, 3H), 3.65 (s, 2H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 6.73 20 (d, 1H), 7.99 (d, 1H)

(e) (4-Methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetic acid methyl ester

(2-Methoxy-4-methylpyridin-3-yl)acetonitrile (825 mg, 5.09 mmol; see step (d) above) was dissolved in HBr (37%, 10 mL) and the solution was heated 25 at 100°C for 5 hours and was further stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting carboxylic acid was used directly in the next step.

HCl (conc., 3 mL) was added to a solution of the crude acid (9.13 g, 50 mmol) in methanol (120 mL) and the reaction mixture was stirred for 10

hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was then concentrated by evaporation under reduced pressure and the residue was dissolved in DCM and washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The organic layer was dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated to give the sub-title compound (8.9 g, 97%).

5 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.12 (s, 3H), 3.56 (s, 2H), 3.60 (s, 3H), 6.07 (d, 1H), 7.15 (d, 1H)

(f) (1-Amino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetic acid methyl ester

10 Caesium carbonate (1.6 g, 11.6 mmol) and *O*-(diphenylphosphinyl)-hydroxylamine (1.54 g, 6.62 mmol; see *Synthesis* 592 (1988) and *Tetrahedron Lett.* 23, 3835 (1982)) were added to a solution of (4-Methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetic acid methyl ester (0.60 g, 3.31 mmol; see step (e) above) in DMF (10 mL). The suspension was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours, filtered and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. Purification by flash chromatography (3% methanol in ethyl acetate) gave the title compound (380 mg, 60%) as a yellow oil.

15 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.09 (s, 3H), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.61 (s, 3H), 5.05 (br d, 2H), 5.96 (d, 1H), 7.37 (d, 1H)

20

Preparation 2

The compounds (i) to (viii) listed below were prepared from the title compound of Preparation 1 by the following General Method A.

The compounds (ix) to (xiv) listed below were prepared from the title compound of Preparation 1 by the following General Method B.

25 Unless otherwise specified, the compounds (xv) to (xviii) listed below were prepared from the title compound of Preparation 1 by the following General Method C.

## General Method A

The specific sulfonyl chloride (0.61 mmol, 1.2 mol equiv.; see List 1 above) and pyridine (125  $\mu$ L, 120 mg, 1.53 mmol) was added to a solution of (1-amino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetic acid methyl ester  
5 (100 mg, 0.51 mmol; see Preparation 1 above) in DCM (4 mL) at 0°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. Pyridine and the solvent were evaporated under reduced pressure. Purification by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50-70% ethyl acetate in hexane) gave the sulfonamides listed at (i) to (viii) below (62-92%).

10

## General Method B

## Step (i)

Borane tetrahydrofuran complex (1 M solution, 1.5 eq) was added to a  
15 stirred solution of the specific acid (1.0 eq; see List 2 above) in THF (0.2 M) at 0°C. The solution was warmed to room temperature during 1 hour and stirring was continued for another hour. Water was carefully added at 0°C and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic phases were combined, dried and the solvent was removed under reduced  
20 pressure to give the reduced product. The crude alcohol was used without further purification.

The alcohol was dissolved in DCM (0.2 M) and Dess-Martin periodinane (1.5 eq) was added to the solution. The resulting suspension was stirred until completion (from 0.5 hour to overnight). Hexane was added to the  
25 mixture and the resulting suspension was filtered through a pad of Celite®/Silica gel. The pad was washed with a solution of 30% ethyl acetate in hexane. The solvents were removed under reduced pressure to give the corresponding aldehyde, which was used in step (ii) without further purification.

30

## Step (ii)

The specific aldehyde (0.50 mmol; see step (i) above) was added to (1-amino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetic acid methyl ester (76 mg, 0.39 mmol; see Preparation 1 above) in anhydrous ethanol (1.5 mL) and the reaction mixture was heated at reflux for 12 hours. The mixture was brought back to room temperature and  $\text{NaBH}_3\text{CN}$  (49 mg, 0.77 mmol) was added and stirring was continued for 4 hours.  $\text{HCl}$  (10%) was added and after stirring 10 minutes the pH was neutralised with  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (sat.). The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (3x10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), filtered and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. Purification directly after work-up by flash chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 45% ethyl acetate in hexane) gave the reductive amination products listed at (ix) to (xiv) below (45-69%).

15

## General Method C

The specific aldehyde (0.52 mmol; see List 3 above) dissolved in methanol (1.5 mL) was added to (1-amino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetic acid methyl ester (100 mg, 0.48 mmol; see Preparation 1 above) in methanol (1.5 mL). Sodium cyanoborohydride (63 mg, 2.85 mmol) and zinc chloride (195 mg, 1.43 mmol) were added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. Another portion of sodium cyanoborohydride (90 mg, 1.43 mmol) and acetic acid (10 droplets) were added and stirring was continued for another 3 hours. Sodium hydroxide (2 M) was added and the mixture was extracted with DCM (3x10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried through a phase separator and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. Purification by flash chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , ethyl acetate:hexane, 1:2) gave the products listed at (xv) to (xviii) below.

30

(i) (4-Methyl-2-oxo-1-phenylmethanesulfonylamino-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl)acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.22 (3H, s), 3.67 (5H, s), 4.35 (2H, s), 6.15 (1H, d), 7.28-7.44 (6H, m), 9.26 (1H, br)

5

(ii) (1-Benzenesulfonylamino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.17 (3H, s), 3.37 (2H, s), 3.60 (3H, s), 6.16 (1H, d), 7.41-7.63 (6H, m), 9.07 (1H, b)

10

(iii) [1-(4-Methoxyphenylmethanesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.16 (3H, s), 3.38 (2H, s), 3.59 (3H, s), 3.87 (3H, s), 6.14 (1H, d), 6.85 (2H, d), 7.53 (2H, d), 7.61 (2H, d), 9.26 (1H, br)

15

(iv) [1-(2-Methoxy-4-methylbenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.09 (s, 2H), 2.36 (s, 3H), 3.36 (s, 2H), 3.53 (s, 3H), 4.01 (s, 3H), 6.03 (d, 1H), 6.69 (d, 1H), 6.79 (s, 1H), 7.48 (d, 1H), 7.58 (d, 1H), 9.30 (s, 1H)

20

(v) [1-(3,4-Dichlorobenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl]acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.20 (s, 3H), 3.44 (s, 2H), 3.63 (s, 3H), 6.20 (d, 1H), 7.38 (dd, 1H), 7.43 (d, 1H), 7.58 (d, 1H), 7.63 (d, 1H), 9.41 (s, 1H)

25

(vi) [1-(3-Methoxybenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl]acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.16 (s, 3H), 3.37 (s, 2H), 3.59 (s, 3H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 6.15 (d, 1H), 7.07-7.09 (m, 2H), 7.21 (d, 1H), 7.31 (t, 1H), 7.63 (d, 1H)

- 5 (vii) [1-(2,5-Dimethylbenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl]acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.14 (s, 3H), 2.22 (s, 3H), 2.59 (s, 3H), 3.36 (s, 2H), 3.57 (s, 3H), 6.08 (d, 1H), 7.14 (d, 1H), 7.22 (d, 1H), 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.52 (d, 1H)

10

- (viii) [4-Methyl-1-(naphthalene-1-sulfonylamino)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl]acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.12 (s, 3H), 3.16 (s, 2H), 3.53 (s, 3H), 6.11 (d, 1H), 7.37-7.49 (m, 3H), 7.54 (t, 1H), 7.88 (d, 1H), 7.98 (d, 1H), 8.05 (d, 1H), 8.50 (d, 1H), 9.31 (br s, 1H)

15

- (ix) (4-Methyl-2-oxo-1-phenethylamino-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl)acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.18 (s, 3H), 2.85 (t, 2H), 3.28 (q, 2H), 3.67 (s, 2H), 3.70 (s, 3H), 6.03 (d, 1H), 6.12 (t, 1H), 7.19-7.36 (m, 5H)

20

- (x) [4-Methyl-2-oxo-1-(2-*o*-tolyl-ethylamino)-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.18 (s, 3H), 2.29 (s, 3H), 2.85 (t, 2H), 3.22 (t, 2H), 3.67 (s, 2H), 3.69 (s, 3H), 6.05 (d, 1H), 7.12-7.18 (m, 4H), 7.37 (d, 1H)

25

- (xi) {1-[2-(2,5-Dimethylphenyl)ethylamino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl}acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.19 (s, 3H), 2.26 (s, 3H), 2.28 (s, 3H), 2.82 (t, 2H), 3.22 (t, 2H), 3.67 (s, 2H), 3.70 (s, 3H), 6.06 (d, 1H), 6.92 (d, 1H), 6.97 (s, 1H), 7.02 (d, 1H), 7.39 (d, 1H)

- 5 (xii) {1-[2-(5-Fluoro-2-methylphenyl)ethylamino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.17 (s, 3H), 2.24 (s, 3H), 2.81 (t, 2H), 3.22 (t, 2H), 3.66 (s, 2H), 3.69 (s, 3H), 6.05 (d, 1H), 6.50 (t, 1H), 6.50 (dd, 1H), 6.88 (dd, 1H), 7.06 (dd, 1H), 7.35 (d, 1H)

10

- (xiii) {4-Methyl-2-oxo-1-[2-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)ethylamino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.18 (s, 3H), 2.92 (t, 2H), 3.30 (t, 2H), 3.66 (s, 2H), 3.69 (s, 3H), 6.04 (d, 1H), 7.33 (d, 1H), 7.40-7.43 (m, 2H), 7.46-  
15 7.48 (m, 2H)

- (xiv) {1-[2-(5-Chloro-2-fluorophenyl)ethylamino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetic acid methyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.18 (s, 3H), 2.84 (t, 2H), 3.25 (t, 2H), 3.66  
20 (s, 2H), 3.70 (s, 2H), 6.04 (d, 1H), 6.95 (t, 1H), 7.15 (dq, 1H), 7.21 (dd, 1H), 7.32 (d, 1H)

- (xv) Methyl [1-(benzylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]-acetate

25 Yield = 42%.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz) δ 2.19 (s, 3H), 3.71 (s, 2H), 3.74 (s, 3H), 4.14 (s, 2H), 5.94 (d, 1H), 7.18 (d, 1H), 7.30-7.41 (m, 5H)

(xvi) Methyl {1-[(3-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl}acetate

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.16 (s, 3H), 3.69 (s, 2H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.79 (s, 3H), 4.08 (d, 2H), 5.92 (d, 1H), 6.29 (t, 1H), 6.84 (dd, 1H), 6.91 (s, 1H),  
5 6.94 (d, 1H), 7.20 (d, 1H), 7.24 (t, 1H)

MS *m/z* 317 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xvii) Methyl {4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl}acetate

10 3-Pyridinecarboxaldehyde (10.6 mmol) was added to a solution of methyl (1-amino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate (2.2 mmol; see Preparation 1 above) in methanol (40 mL) and acetic acid (10 mL) and the resulting solution was stirred at room temperature. After 22 hours, the solution was concentrated and acetic acid was removed by co-concentrating  
15 the residue from toluene, hexane and methanol. Sodium cyanoborohydride (6 mmol) was added to the residue in methanol (40 mL) and acetic acid (10 mL) and the resulting solution was stirred at room temperature overnight before being concentrated. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (sat. aq.) and brine, dried, filtered and the solvent  
20 was evaporated under reduced pressure. Purification by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 0-10% methanol in DCM containing 0.2% acetic acid and 0.1 % TEA) gave the desired product.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.52-8.58 (m, 2H), 7.70 (d, 1H), 7.24-7.30 (m, 1H), 7.12 (d, 1H), 6.25 (t, 1H), 5.93 (d, 1H), 4.14 (d, 2H), 3.70 (s, 3H),  
25 3.67 (s, 2H), 2.16 (s, 3H)

(xviii) Methyl (1-[(2-methoxypyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate

2-Methoxynicotinaldehyde (3.6 mmol) was added to a solution of methyl (1-amino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate (2.4 mmol; see Preparation 1 above) in methanol (40 mL) and acetic acid (10 mL) and the resulting solution was stirred at room temperature. After 4.5 hours sodium cyanoborohydride (7.4 mmol) was added and the resulting solution was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours before being concentrated. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (sat. aq.) and brine, dried, filtered and concentrated. Purification by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, DCM:methanol, 900:25) gave the desired product.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.13 (d, 1H), 7.50 (d, 1H), 7.23 (d, 1H), 6.85 (dd, 1H), 6.50 (t, 1H), 5.99 (d, 1H), 4.14 (d, 2H), 3.98 (s, 3H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 3.68 (s, 2H), 2.19 (s, 3H)

### Preparation 3

#### (4-Aminomethylpyridin-2-yl)carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester

##### (a) (4-Azidomethylpyridin-2-yl)carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester

A mixture of (4-bromomethylpyridin-2-yl)carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester (3.0 g, 0.010 mol; obtainable as described in WO 00/66557) and sodium azide (1.36 g, 0.0209 mol) in water (20 mL) and DMF (40 mL) was stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was poured into water (300 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (3x). The combined organic phases were washed with water, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The crude product crystallised (2.6 g, 100 %) and was used without further purification.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 10.14 (bs, 1H), 8.36 (d, 1H), 7.99 (bs, 1H), 6.91 (m, 1H), 4.37 (bs, 2H), 1.54 (s, 9H)

(b) (4-Aminomethylpyridin-2-yl)carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester

A solution of sodium borohydride (0.92 g, 24 mmol) in water (25 mL) was added to a slurry of Pd/C (10%, 50 mg) in water (25 mL) under stirring. Next, (4-azidomethylpyridin-2-yl)carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester (0.40 g, 6.1 mmol; see step (a) above) in THF (75 mL) was added dropwise rather rapidly under ice-cooling. The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. An aqueous solution of sodium hydrogensulfate was added slowly to give an acidic pH. The reaction mixture was suction filtered through a Celite® pad which was further washed with water. The combined aqueous layer was washed with ethyl acetate, made alkaline by addition of NaOH (aq.) and extracted with ethyl acetate (3x). The combined organic phases were washed with water, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The crude product (1.1 g, 85%) crystallised and was used without further purification.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 10.06 (m, 1H), 8.25 (m, 1H), 7.94 (m, 1H), 6.88 (m, 1H), 3.83 (bs, 2H), 1.50 (s, 9H).

Preparation 4

The compounds (i) to (xlii) listed below were prepared from the title compound of Preparation 1 by the following general method.

The specific aldehyde (2.0 mmol, 2 mol equiv.; see List 4 above) was dissolved in methanol/THF (5 mL, 2:1). To the resulting solution was added, under stirring, a solution of (1-amino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetic acid methyl ester (196 mg, 1.0 mmol; see Preparation 1 above) in methanol/THF (5 mL, 2:1). Acetic acid (1 mL) was added, and imine formation was allowed to take place by stirring at room temperature for 5 to 20 hours. Sodium cyanoborohydride (377 to 628 mg, 3 to 5 mmol, 3 to 5 mol equiv.) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours (or until full conversion of the imine was observed). The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure

and the crude product mixtures were dissolved in DCM and extracted with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (sat.) using phase separators. Especially polar products were subsequently extracted with ethyl acetate (4x10 mL), if needed. The organic phase was eluted through a silica plug (1 g), eluting with a gradient  
5 of DCM/MeOH mixtures (1:0 through to 3:1). Alternatively, the product was purified by Biotage Horizon Flash, eluting with MeOH/DCM/Et<sub>3</sub>N (2:98:0.1). Evaporation of relevant fractions gave crude products (alkylated esters) that were used in the next stage without further purification.

10 (i) Methyl [1-(isobutylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]-acetate

(ii) Methyl (4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[(1-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-5-yl)methyl]-amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate

15

(iii) Methyl [1-({[2,5-dimethyl-1-(4*H*-1,2,4-triazol-4-yl)-1*H*-pyrrol-3-yl]methyl}amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetate

(iv) Methyl (1-{[(4-benzoyl-1-methyl-1*H*-pyrrol-2-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate  
20

(v) Methyl (1-[(2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-5-ylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate

25 (vi) Methyl (1-{[(2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate

(vii) Methyl (1-{[(1,5-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate

30

(viii) Methyl [4-methyl-2-oxo-1-({[1-(phenylsulfonyl)-1*H*-pyrrol-2-yl]-methyl}amino)-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetate

(ix) Methyl (1-{{(3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate

(x) Methyl (1-{{(4-chloro-2-phenyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate

(xi) Methyl {1-[(2,1,3-Benzoxadiazol-5-ylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate

(xii) Methyl {4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyrazin-2-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate

(xiii) Methyl {1-[(cyclopentylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate

(xiv) Methyl (4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{{(5-pyridin-2-yl-2-thienyl)methyl}amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate

(xv) Methyl (1-{{(5-chloro-1,3-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate

(xvi) Methyl (1-{{(6-chloro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate

(xvii) Methyl (4-methyl-1-{{(1-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl}amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate

- (xviii) Methyl {1-[(cyclohexylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl}acetate
- (xix) Methyl (4-methyl-1-{[(4-methyl-3,4-dihydro-2*H*-1,4-benzoxazin-7-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate
- (xx) Methyl {1-[(4-cyanobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl}acetate
- (xxi) Methyl {4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenoxybenzyl)amino]-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl}acetate
- (xxii) Methyl (1-{[(1-ethyl-3-methyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate
- (xxiii) Methyl (4-methyl-1-{[(4-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate
- (xxiv) Methyl (1-{[(5-chloro-1-methyl-3-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate
- (xxv) Methyl (4-methyl-1-{[(2-morpholin-4-yl)pyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate
- (xxvi) Methyl {1-[(3,3-dimethylbutyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl}acetate
- (xxvii) Methyl (1-{[(5-chloro-2-thienyl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate

- (xxviii) Methyl {1-[(3-cyano-4-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate
- (xxix) Methyl (4-methyl-1-{[(5-methyl-3-phenylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]-  
5 amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate
- (xxx) Methyl (4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate
- 10 (xxxi) Methyl {1-[(5-chloro-2-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate
- (xxxii) Methyl (4-methyl-1-{[(2-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate  
15
- (xxxiii) Methyl {1-[(2-fluoro-5-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate
- (xxxiv) Methyl {4-methyl-1-[(2-morpholin-4-ylbenzyl)amino]-2-oxo-1,2-  
20 dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate
- (xxxv) Methyl (1-{[(1,3-dimethyl-5-morpholin-4-yl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)-methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetate
- 25 (xxxvi) Methyl {4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(quinolin-8-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate
- (xxxvii) Methyl [4-methyl-2-oxo-1-({[5-(2-thienyl)isoxazol-3-yl]methyl}-amino)-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetate

(xxxviii) Methyl {4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylpropyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate

(xxxix) Methyl {1-[(bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-en-2-ylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate

(xl) Methyl [1-({3-[(2-chloro-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methoxy]benzyl}amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetate

(xli) Methyl (4-methyl-1-{{[(3-methyl-5-phenylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate

(xlii) Methyl (1-{{[(1,3-dimethyl-5-morpholin-4-yl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate

#### Preparation 5

Methyl {1-[(2,2-difluoro-2-pyridin-2-ylethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate

(a) 2,2-Difluoro-2-pyridin-2-ylethyl trifluoromethanesulfonate

The sub-title compound was prepared according to the method described in *J. Med. Chem.* 46, 461 (2003))

(b) Methyl {1-[(2,2-difluoro-2-pyridin-2-ylethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetate

A solution of 2,2-difluoro-2-pyridin-2-ylethyl trifluoromethanesulfonate (2.0 mmol; see step (a) above) and (1-amino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetic acid methyl ester (2.09 mmol; see Preparation 1 above) in 1,2-dichloroethane (40 mL) was stirred at 50°C for 3 days before

being concentrated. Purification by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, ethyl acetate) gave the title compound.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.63 (d, 1H), 7.82 (dt, 1H), 7.69 (d, 1H), 7.37 (dd, 1H), 7.29 (d, 1H), 6.27 (t, 1H), 5.98 (d, 1H), 3.85-3.93 (m, 2H),  
5 3.68 (s, 3H), 3.63 (s, 2H), 2.15 (s, 3H)

#### Preparation 6

##### tert-butyl [2-(aminomethyl)-4-fluorobenzyl]carbamate

#### 10 (a) Methyl 2-bromo-5-fluorobenzoate

To a solution of 2-bromo-5-fluorobenzoic acid (3.0 g, 13.7 mmol) in methanol (4 mL) was added HCl-saturated methanol (70 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred for 24 hours and then concentrated. The excess of HCl was removed by co-evaporation from methanol to give the sub-title  
15 compound (97%), which was used in the next step without further purification.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 3.96 (s, 3H), 7.09 (dt, 1H), 7.55 (dd, 1H), 7.65 (dd, 1H)

#### 20 (b) Methyl 2-cyano-5-fluorobenzoate

Methyl 2-bromo-5-fluorobenzoate (3.0 g, 12.87 mmol; see step (a) above) was dissolved in dry DMF (18 mL). The resulting solution was then degassed by flushing with N<sub>2</sub> gas for 5 minutes. Copper(I) cyanide (2.3 g, 25.74 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was degassed again before  
25 being refluxed for 90 minutes. NaCN (aq, 10%) was added and the mixture was extracted with DCM. The DCM phase was dried through a phase separator and the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The crude product was dissolved in toluene and washed once with water. The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* to give

the crude sub-title compound (77%), which was used in the next step without further purification.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  4.04 (s, 3H), 7.38 (dt, 1H), 7.82-7.87 (m, 2H)

5

(c) [2-(Aminomethyl)-5-fluorophenyl]methanol

Lithium aluminium hydride (1.12 g, 29.5 mmol) was dispersed in dry THF (10 mL) and the resulting mixture cooled with an ice bath. Methyl 2-cyano-5-fluorobenzoate (1.76 g, 9.85 mmol; see step (b) above) was dissolved in  
10 THF (10+5 mL) and added to the reducing agent. The reaction mixture was stirred for 10 minutes and then the ice bath was removed. After 1 hour, the reaction was quenched with water (2 mL), NaOH (2M, 4 mL) and then more water (2 mL), after which the resulting mixture was stirred for 10 minutes. The mixture was diluted with diethyl ether (50 mL) and filtered.  
15 The organic phase was dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and filtered. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* to give the sub-title compound (81 %), which was used without further purification.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  4.01 (s, 2H), 4.63 (s, 2H), 6.95 (dt, 1H), 7.11 (dd, 1H), 7.23 (dd, 1H)

20

(d) *tert*-Butyl [4-fluoro-2-(hydroxymethyl)benzyl]carbamate

[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-fluorophenyl]methanol (1.24 g, 7.99 mmol; see step (c) above) was dissolved in DCM (20 mL) and di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (1.74 g, 7.99 mmol), dissolved in DCM (5 mL), was added. The reaction  
25 mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM and washed once with water. The DCM phase was dried through a phase separator and the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. *tert*-Butanol was coevaporated from toluene to give the sub-title compound (96%), which was used without further purification.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.45 (s, 9H), 2.83 (br s, 1H), 4.35 (d, 2H), 4.74 (s, 2H), 5.06 (br s, 1H), 6.99 (dt, 1H), 7.11 (dd, 1H), 7.29-7.31 (m, 1H)

(e) tert-Butyl [2-(azidomethyl)-4-fluorobenzyl]carbamate

5 *tert*-Butyl [4-fluoro-2-(hydroxymethyl)benzyl]carbamate (1.96 g, 7.70 mmol; see step (d) above) was dissolved in dry THF (25 mL) and the resulting solution was cooled with an ice bath. Diphenylphosphoryl azide (2.75 g, 10.0 mmol) and DBU (1.52 g, 10.0 mmol) were added. The mixture was stirred under inert atmosphere and the ice bath was left to  
10 warm to room temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with water and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic phase was washed with brine and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered before the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. Purification by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, heptane:ethyl acetate 10:1) gave the sub-title compound (76%).

15 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.48 (s, 9H), 4.34 (d, 2H), 4.45 (s, 2H), 4.83 (br s, 1H), 7.04 (dt, 1H), 7.08 (dd, 1H), 7.32-7.39 (m, 1H)

(f) tert-Butyl [2-(aminomethyl)-4-fluorobenzyl]carbamate

TEA (1.76 g, 17.55 mmol) in methanol (15 mL) was added to *tert*-butyl [2-(azidomethyl)-4-fluorobenzyl]carbamate (1.64 g, 5.85 mmol; see step (e)  
20 above) and the mixture was flushed with N<sub>2</sub> gas. 1,3-Propanedithiol (1.90 g, 17.55 mmol) dissolved in methanol (15 mL) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 days. The white precipitate that formed was filtered off and washed with methanol. The  
25 filtrate was collected and the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. Purification by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 2.5% methanol in DCM + 1% TEA) gave the title compound (82%).

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.48 (s, 9H), 3.94 (s, 2H), 4.33 (d, 2H), 5.80 (br s, 1H), 6.94 (dt, 1H), 7.06 (dd, 1H), 7.32 (dd, 1H)

Preparation 7*tert*-Butyl [2-(aminomethyl)-4-methoxybenzyl]carbamate

The title compound was prepared by a method analogous to that described in Preparation 6, steps (b) to (f) above, using methyl 2-bromo-5-methoxybenzoate in place of methyl 2-bromo-5-fluorobenzoate in step (b),  
5 and reaction times of 2 hours, 2 hours and 1 hour for steps (b), (c) and (d), respectively.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.44 (s, 9H), 3.83 (s, 3H), 4.04 (d, 2H), 4.27 (d, 2H) 5.76 (br s, 1H), 6.83 (dd, 1H), 7.03 (d, 1H), 7.24 (d, 1H)

10

Preparation 8*tert*-Butyl [2-(aminomethyl)-4-methylbenzyl]carbamate

The title compound was prepared by a method analogous to that described in Preparation 6 above, using 2-chloro-5-methylbenzoic acid in place of 2-bromo-5-fluorobenzoic acid in step (a), and the following variations to the  
15 procedures:

- (I) in step (b), the mixture was initially refluxed for 18 hours, an additional portion of CuCN (1 equiv.) was then added and the reaction mixture was further refluxed for 16 hours;
- 20 (II) in step (e), toluene:ethyl acetate (15:1) was used for chromatography; and
- (III) in step (f), no precipitate formed and purification was performed directly after concentration of the reaction mixture.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.46 (s, 9H), 2.36 (s, 3H), 3.92 (s, 2H), 4.35  
25 (d, 2H), 5.98 (br s, 1H), 7.08 (d, 1H), 7.13 (s, 1H), 7.24 (d, 1H)

### Preparation 9

#### *tert*-Butyl [2-(aminomethyl)-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]carbamate

The title compound was prepared by a method analogous to that described in Preparation 6 above, using 2-chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid in place of 2-bromo-5-fluorobenzoic acid in step (a), and the following variations to the procedures:

- (I) in step (b), the reaction mixture was refluxed for 3 days and purification by chromatography was with heptane:ethyl acetate (15:1);
  - (II) in step (e), the crude product was not purified before being used in step (f); and
  - (III) in step (f), the reaction mixture was stirred for 24 hours.
- <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 1.48 (s, 9H), 3.98 (s, 2H), 4.36 (s, 2H), 7.50 (d, 1H), 7.56 (d, 1H), 7.72 (s, 1H)

### Examples

#### Example 1

Unless otherwise stated, the compounds (i) to (xxxvi) listed below were prepared from corresponding compounds of Preparation 2 by the following general method.

Sodium hydroxide (29 mg, 0.71 mmol) was added to a solution of the specific ester (0.24 mmol; see Preparation 2 above) in THF:water:methanol (3 mL, 2:2:1) and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The mixture was acidified (HCl, 1 M) until pH ~ 2 and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 5 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue (the carboxylic acid) was used without further purification.

DIPEA (125  $\mu$ L, 0.71 mmol) and the specific amine (0.31 mmol; see List 5 above) were added to the crude carboxylic acid (see above) in DMF (4 mL) at 0°C. After 30 minutes, EDC (69 mg, 0.36 mmol) and HOBt (49 mg, 0.36 mmol) were added and the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour and then at room temperature for 2 days. DMF was removed under reduced pressure. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (sat., 2 mL) was added and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 5 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. Purification by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 5% methanol in ethyl acetate) gave the amides listed at (i) to (xv) below as oils. The yields over two steps for these amides were 68-84%.

(i) [Amino-(4-{[2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-phenylmethanesulfonylamino-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetylamino]methyl}phenyl)methylene]carbamic acid benzyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD)  $\delta$  2.21 (3H, s), 3.35 (2H, s), 4.39 (2H, s), 4.43 (2H, s), 5.18 (2H, s), 6.17 (1H, d), 7.26-7.55 (13H, m), 7.69 (2H, d)

(ii) [Amino-(4-{[2-(1-benzenesulfonylamino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetylamino]methyl}phenyl)methylene]carbamic acid benzyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  2.11 (s, 3H), 3.29 (s, 2H), 4.25 (s, 2H), 5.21 (s, 2H), 6.11 (d, 1H), 6.91-7.70 (m, 18H), 10.05 (br s, 1H)

(iii) {Amino-[4-({2-[1-(4-methoxybenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetylamino}methyl)phenyl)methylene}carbamic acid benzyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.18 (3H, s), 3.36 (2H, s), 3.72 (3H, s), 4.32 (2H, s), 5.18 (2H, s), 6.17 (1H, d), 6.91 (2H, d), 7.26-7.54 (9H, m), 7.61 (2H, d), 7.69 (2H, d)

- 5 (iv) {Amino-[4-({2-[1-(2-methoxy-4-methylbenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl amino}methyl)phenyl]methylene}-carbamic acid benzyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.19 (s, 3H), 2.33 (s, 3H), 3.38 (s, 2H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 4.32 (s, 2H), 5.19 (s, 2H), 6.20 (d, 1H), 6.73 (d, 1H), 6.97 (s, 1H),  
10 7.30-7.38 (m, 5H), 7.41 (d, 2H), 7.48 (d, 1H), 7.54 (d, 1H), 7.80 (d, 2H)

- (v) {Amino-[4-({2-[1-(3,4-dichlorobenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl amino}methyl)phenyl]methylene}carbamic acid benzyl ester

15 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.22 (s, 3H), 3.38 (s, 2H), 4.34 (s, 2H), 5.19 (s, 2H), 6.21 (d, 1H), 7.29-7.36 (m, 5H), 7.41-7.46 (m, 3H), 7.55 (s, 2H), 7.78 (d, 1H), 7.83 (s, 1H)

- (vi) {Amino-[4-({2-[1-(3-methoxybenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl amino}methyl)phenyl]methylene}carbamic acid benzyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.30 (s, 3H), 3.30 (s, 2H), 3.70 (s, 3H), 4.25 (d, 1H), 5.20 (s, 2H), 6.17 (d, 1H), 6.89 (br s, 1H), 7.04 (d, 1H), 7.13-7.37 (m, 7H), 7.43 (d, 2H), 7.48 (d, 1H), 7.71 (d, 2H)

25

- (vii) {Amino-[4-({2-[1-(2,5-dimethylbenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl amino}methyl)phenyl]methylene}-carbamic acid benzyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.23 (s, 3H), 2.30 (s, 3H), 2.60 (s, 3H), 3.35 (s, 2H), 4.27 (d, 2H), 5.20 (s, 2H), 6.12 (d, 1H), 6.91 (br s, 1H), 7.11-7.49 (m, 11H), 7.77 (d, 2H)

- 5 (viii) {Amino-[4-({2-[4-methyl-1-(naphthalene-1-sulfonylamino)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetylamino}methyl)phenyl]methylene}carbamic acid benzyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.19 (s, 3H), 3.15 (s, 2H), 4.11 (s, 2H), 5.17 (s, 2H), 5.99 (d, 1H), 7.00 (d, 4H), 7.26-7.51 (m, 8H), 7.60 (d, 2H), 7.83 (d, 10 1H), 7.99 (d, 2H), 8.56 (br d, 1H)

(ix) [4-Chloro-2-({2-[4-methyl-1-(naphthalene-1-sulfonylamino)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetylamino}methyl)benzyl]carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester

- 15 The specific ester (0.47 mmol) was hydrolysed as described in General Method C above, except that the volume of solvent was 5 mL and the reaction time was 5.5 hours. The resulting, crude carboxylic acid (0.06 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (1 mL) and TEA (2 eq.) and the specific amine (1 equiv.; see List 5 above) were added. The mixture was  
20 cooled to 0°C and PyBOP (1 equiv.) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes and then allowed to warm to room temperature and further stirred overnight. Additional portions of TEA (2 equiv.), amine (0.4 equiv) and PyBOP (0.3 equiv.) were added and the reaction was stirred for 4 hours. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the  
25 residue was purified by chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 5% methanol in DCM) to give the product (89%).

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.49 (s, 9H), 2.29 (s, 3H), 3.12 (s, 2H), 4.14 (br s, 2H), 4.21 (br s, 2H), 6.14 (d, 1H), 6.74 (t, 1H), 7.21 (bs, 2H), 7.45 (t,

1H), 7.56-7.64 (m, 2H), 7.88-7.93 (m, 1H), 8.08 (d, 1H), 8.11 (d, 1H), 8.62 (br s, 1H)

(x) [Amino-(4-{[2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-phenethylamino-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetylamino]methyl}phenyl)methylene]carbamic acid benzyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.32 (s, 3H), 2.81 (t, 2H, *J* = 7.4Hz), 3.20 (q, 2H, *J* = 7.5Hz), 3.58 (s, 2H), 4.37 (d, 2H, *J* = 6.0Hz), 5.20 (s, 2H), 6.09-6.13 (m, 2H), 7.03-7.78 (m, 15H), 9.50 (br s, 1H)

(xi) {Amino-[4-({2-[4-methyl-2-oxo-1-(2-o-tolyethylamino)-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetylamino}methyl)phenyl)methylene}carbamic acid benzyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.24 (s, 3H), 2.32 (s, 3H), 2.79 (t, 2H), 3.14 (q, 2H), 3.58 (s, 2H), 4.35 (d, 2H), 5.20 (s, 2H), 6.12 (d, 1H), 7.06-7.13 (m, 4H), 7.15 (d, 2H), 7.28-7.37 (m, 4H), 7.43 (d, 2H), 7.66 (d, 3H)

(xii) (Amino-{4-[2-{1-[2-(2,5-dimethylphenyl)ethylamino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetylamino)methyl]phenyl)methylene}carbamic acid benzyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.20 (s, 3H), 2.25 (s, 3H), 2.31 (s, 3H), 2.76 (t, 2H), 3.14 (q, 2H), 3.58 (s, 2H), 4.35 (d, 2H), 5.19 (s, 2H), 6.11 (d, 1H), 6.18 (s, 1H), 6.91 (d, 2H), 7.00 (d, 1H), 7.14 (d, 2H), 7.26-7.36 (m, 5H), 7.43 (d, 2H), 7.67 (d, 3H), 9.27 (br s, 1H)

(xiii) {5-[(2-{1-[2-(5-Fluoro-2-methylphenyl)ethylamino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetylamino)methyl]pyridin-2-yl}carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.52 (s, 9H), 2.19 (s, 3H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 2.75 (t, 2H), 3.12-3.14 (m, 2H), 3.56 (s, 2H), 4.28 (d, 1H), 6.12 (d, 2H), 6.79 (s,

1H), 6.83 (d, 1H), 7.05 (d, 1H), 7.33 (d, 1H), 7.46-7.48 (m, 1H), 7.55 (s, 1H), 7.83 (d, 1H), 8.1 (d, 1H), 8.76 (s, 1H)

(xiv) {5-[(2-{4-Methyl-2-oxo-1-[2-(2-trifluoromethylphenyl)ethylamino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetylamino)methyl]pyridin-2-yl}carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.52 (s, 9H), 2.35 (s, 3H), 2.86-2.89 (m, 2H), 3.22-3.26 (m, 2H), 3.56 (s, 2H), 4.31 (d, 2H), 6.12 (d, 2H), 7.31 (d, 2H), 7.39-7.42 (m, 2H), 7.48-7.50 (m, 2H), 7.52-7.54 (m, 2H), 7.88 (d, 1H), 8.09 (s, 1H), 8.26 (s, 1H)

(xv) 2-{1-[2-(5-Chloro-2-fluorophenyl)ethylamino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}-*N*-(3-fluoro-4-methylpyridin-2-ylmethyl)acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.32 (s, 3H), 2.81 (t, 2H), 3.25 (t, 2H), 3.65 (s, 2H), 4.55 (s, 2H), 6.08 (d, 1H), 6.17 (br s, 1H), 6.93, 6.99 (m, 2H), 7.14-7.18 (m, 2H), 7.31 (d, 1H), 7.82 (br s, 1H), 8.1 (br s, 1H)

(xvi) *tert*-Butyl {2-[(1-(benzylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino)methyl]-4-chlorobenzyl} carbamate

The corresponding ester of Preparation 2 was hydrolysed with sodium hydroxide as described in the above General Method. The amide coupling was then performed as described with respect to Example 1(ix) above, except without the extra addition of reagents. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography and preparative HPLC to give the desired product.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.46 (s, 9H), 2.36 (s, 3H), 3.61 (s, 2H), 4.08 (d, 2H), 4.27-4.32 (m, 2H), 4.39 (d, 2H), 5.34 (br s, 1H), 6.03 (d, 1H), 6.38 (br s, 1H), 7.13-7.20 (m, 3H), 7.24-7.37 (m, 6H), 7.61 (br s, 1H)

MS *m/z* 525.2 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xvii) Di-*tert*-butyl ((*E*)-{[2-({[1-(benzylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl}amino)ethoxy]amino}methylylidene)-biscarbamate

The compound was prepared according to the method described with respect to Example 1(xvi) above except that preparative HPLC was not  
5 needed to provide desired product in a sufficiently pure form.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.50 (s, 18H), 2.32 (s, 3H), 3.53 (q, 2H), 3.61 (s, 2H) 4.10 (t, 2H), 4.12 (d, 2H), 5.99 (d, 1H), 6.43 (t, 1H), 7.15 (d, 1H), 7.29-7.38 (m, 5H), 7.67-7.72 (m, 1H), 8.02 (s, 1H), 9.09 (s, 1H)

10 MS *m/z* 573.6 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xviii) *tert*-Butyl {5-[(1-(benzylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl}amino)methyl]-6-methylpyridin-2-yl}carbamate

The corresponding ester of Preparation 2 was hydrolysed as described in the  
15 above General Method, except that the reaction mixture was stirred overnight. The amide coupling was performed as described with respect to Example 1(ix) above, but without the extra addition of reagents and with the use of TBME:methanol (97:3) as eluent for the chromatography.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.49 (s, 9H), 2.33 (s, 3H), 2.35 (s, 3H), 3.59  
20 (s, 2H), 4.01 (d, 2H), 4.31 (d, 2H), 6.01 (d, 1H), 6.27 (t, 1H), 7.07 (br s, 1H), 7.16 (d, 1H), 7.27-7.35 (m, 4H), 7.40 (d, 1H), 7.44 (t, 1H), 7.63 (d, 1H)

(xix) *tert*-Butyl (4-chloro-2-({[4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl}amino)methyl}benzyl)carbamate  
25

The corresponding ester of Preparation 2 was hydrolysed as described in the above General Method, except that the reaction mixture was stirred overnight. The amide coupling reaction was then performed as described in respect of Example 1(ix) above, except that amine (0.1 equiv.) was the only

reagent added at the extra addition step, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 4 hours. The crude product was purified by preparative HPLC.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.46 (s, 9H), 2.36 (s, 3H), 2.85 (t, 2H), 3.24 (q, 2H), 3.59 (s, 2H), 4.20-4.30 (m, 2H), 4.37 (d, 2H), 5.28 (br s, 1H), 6.12-6.20 (m, 2H), 7.10 (s, 1H), 7.14 (d, 1H), 7.19-7.26 (m, 4H), 7.28-7.33 (m, 2H), 7.36 (d, 1H), 7.60 (br s, 1H)

MS *m/z* 539 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xx) *tert*-Butyl (6-methyl-5-{{[4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}pyridin-2-yl)carbamate

The corresponding ester of Preparation 2 was hydrolysed as described in the General Method above, except that the reaction mixture was stirred overnight. The amide coupling reaction was then performed as described in respect of Example 1(ix) above, except that amine (0.1 equiv.) was the only reagent added at the extra addition step, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 3 hours. The crude product was purified by preparative HPLC.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.52 (s, 9H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 2.36 (s, 3H), 2.84 (t, 2H), 3.21 (q, 2H), 3.58 (s, 2H), 4.30 (d, 2H), 6.10 (t, 1H), 6.13 (d, 1H), 7.14 (s, 1H), 7.19-7.26 (m, 3H), 7.29-7.40 (m, 4H), 7.44 (t, 1H), 7.63 (d, 1H)

MS *m/z* 507 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxi) *tert*-Butyl (4-chloro-2-{{[1-[(3-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}benzyl)carbamate

The corresponding compound from Preparation 2 was hydrolysed as described in the above General Method. The amide coupling reaction was then performed as described with respect to Example 1(ix) above, except that 1.3 equivalents of the specific amine were used and no extra reagents were added.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.44 (s, 9H), 2.33, (s, 3H), 3.60 (s, 2H), 3.80 (s, 3H), 4.05 (d, 2H), 4.28 (d, 2H), 4.38 (d, 2H), 5.40 (br s, 1H), 6.03 (d, 1H), 6.39 (br s, 1H), 6.84-6.88 (m, 3H), 7.26-7.24 (m, 5H), 7.61 (br s, 1H)  
MS *m/z* 557 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

5

(xxii) *tert*-Butyl (5-{{1-[(3-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino)methyl}-6-methylpyridin-2-yl)carbamate  
The corresponding ester from Preparation 2 was hydrolysed as described in the above General Method. The amide coupling reaction was then  
10 performed as described in the above General Method, except that TEA was used instead of DIPEA and HOAt instead of HOBt.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.50 (s, 9H), 2.33, (s, 3H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 3.40 (s, 2H), 3.80 (s, 3H), 4.00 (d, 2H), 4.30 (d, 2H), 6.02 (d, 1H), 6.36 (t, 1H), 6.83-6.87 (m, 3H), 7.20 (d, 1H), 7.23 (t, 1H), 7.38 (d, 1H), 7.40 (s, 1H),  
15 7.48 (t, 1H), 7.63 (d, 1H)  
MS *m/z* 522 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxiii) *tert*-Butyl (4-chloro-2-{{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)-amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino)methyl}benzyl)carbamate

20 The corresponding ester from Preparation 2 was hydrolysed with lithium hydroxide (1 M aq., 1.5 equiv.) in THF:MeOH (1:1) and the crude carboxylate was coupled to the specific amine (see List 5 above) according to the procedure described in the above General Method, except that TEA was used instead of DIPEA and HOAt instead of HOBt.

25 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.56 (d, 1H), 8.53 (s, 1H), 7.64 (d, 1H), 7.52 (s, 1H), 7.24-7.31 (m, 2H), 7.12-7.21 (m, 3H), 6.35 (br s, 1H), 6.04 (d, 1H), 5.35 (br s, 1H), 4.40 (d, 2H), 4.29 (d, 2H), 4.12 (d, 2H), 3.59 (d, 2H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 1.44 (s, 9H)  
MS *m/z* 528 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

30

(xxiv) *tert*-Butyl (6-methyl-5-{{(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)-amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino}methyl}pyridin-2-yl)-carbamate

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 1(xxiii) above.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.52-8.60 (m, 2H), 7.58-7.68 (m, 2H), 7.34-7.44 (m, 2H), 7.25-7.30 (m, 1H), 7.16 (d, 1H), 6.26-6.34 (m, 1H), 6.04 (d, 1H), 4.32 (d, 2H), 4.05 (d, 2H), 3.59 (s, 2H), 2.36 (s, 6H), 1.50 (s, 9H)

MS *m/z* 493 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

10

(xxv) *tert*-Butyl [5-({[(1-{{(2-methoxypyridin-3-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl)-6-methylpyridin-2-yl]carbamate

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 1(xxiii) above.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.11 (dd, 1H), 7.63 (d, 1H), 7.36-7.45 (m, 3H), 7.24 (d, 1H), 7.19 (bs, 1H), 6.81 (dd, 1H), 6.57 (t, 1H), 6.08 (d, 1H), 4.29 (d, 2H), 4.06 (d, 2H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 3.57 (s, 2H), 2.34-2.37 (m, 6H), 1.50 (s, 9H)

MS *m/z* 523 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

20

(xxvi) *tert*-Butyl [4-chloro-2-({[(1-{{(2-methoxypyridin-3-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl)-benzyl]carbamate

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 1(xxiii) above.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.10 (dd, 1H), 7.57 (bs, 1H), 7.38 (d, 1H), 7.10-7.26 (m, 4H), 6.80 (dd, 1H), 6.63 (bs, 1H), 6.08 (d, 1H), 5.38 (bs, 1H),

4.36 (d, 2H), 4.28 (bd, 2H), 4.10 d, 2H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.57 (s, 2H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 1.44 (s, 9H)

(xxvii) 2-(1-{[(2-Methoxypyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-*N*-[2-(1*H*-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl]acetamide

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 1(xxiii) above. The crude compound was then purified by preparative HPLC.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 9.54 (s, 1H), 8.04 (dd, 1H), 7.60-7.67 (m, 2H), 7.51-7.57 (m, 2H), 7.47 (d, 1H), 7.41 (d, 1H), 6.87 (dd, 1H), 6.19 (d, 1H), 4.23 (s, 2H), 4.16 (s, 2H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 3.49 (s, 2H), 2.21 (s, 3H)

MS *m/z* 461 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxviii) *tert*-Butyl {5-[(1-(benzylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino)methyl}-4,6-dimethylpyridin-2-yl}carbamate

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 1(xxii) above.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.48 (s, 9H), 2.29 (s, 3H), 2.33 (s, 3H), 2.40 (s, 3H), 3.54 (s, 2H), 3.94 (d, 2H), 4.34 (d, 2H), 5.99 (d, 1H), 6.19 (t, 1H), 7.04 (br s, 1H), 7.14 (d, 1H), 7.23-7.28 (m, 3H), 7.29-7.35 (m, 3H), 7.56 (s, 1H)

MS *m/z* 506 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxix) 2-[1-(Benzylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]-*N*-[2-(1*H*-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl]acetamide

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 1(xxii) above.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.27 (s, 3H), 3.53 (s, 2H), 4.10 (d, 2H), 4.20 (d, 2H), 6.01 (d, 1H), 6.36 (t, 1H), 7.19 (d, 1H), 7.27-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.43 (m, 1H), 7.50-7.63 (m, 3H), 8.96 (s, 1H)

MS *m/z* 430 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

5

(xxx) *N*-[(6-Amino-2,5-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(3-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

The corresponding ester from Preparation 2 was hydrolysed as described in the above General Method. The amide coupling reaction was then performed as described in the above General Method, except that 1.5 equivalents of the specific amine (see List 5 above) were used and that TEA was used instead of DIPEA and HOAt instead of HOBt.

10

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.07 (s, 3H), 2.24 (s, 3H), 2.31 (s, 3H), 3.60 (s, 2H), 3.78 (s, 3H), 4.07 (s, 2H), 4.24 (d, 2H), 6.15 (d, 1H), 6.83-6.91 (m, 3H), 7.22 (t, 2H), 7.34 (d, 1H)

15

MS *m/z* 436 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxxi) *tert*-Butyl (4-methoxy-2-{[(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}benzyl)-carbamate

20

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 1(xxiii) above.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.45 (s, 9H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 3.59 (s, 2H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 4.02 (d, 2H), 4.24-4.29 (m, 2H), 4.40 (d, 2H), 5.29 (br s, 1H), 6.01 (d, 1H), 6.32 (br s, 1H), 6.73 (d, 1H), 6.77 (br s, 1H), 7.12 (d, 1H), 7.23 (d, 1H), 7.45 (br s, 1H), 7.63 (d, 1H), 8.52 (s, 1H), 8.56 (d, 1H)

25

MS *m/z* 523 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxxii) *tert*-Butyl [2-{{(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino)methyl}-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]-carbamate

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 1(xxiii) above.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.45 (s, 9H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 3.60 (s, 2H), 4.11 (d, 2H), 4.23-4.40 (m, 2H), 4.46 (d, 2H), 5.41 (t, 1H), 6.04 (d, 1H), 6.34 (br s, 1H), 7.17 (d, 1H), 7.24-7.30 (m, 1H), 7.38 (br s, 1H), 7.42-7.50 (m, 2H), 7.59 (br s, 1H), 7.64 (d, 1H), 8.52 (s, 1H), 8.56 (d, 1H)

MS *m/z* 560 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxxiii) 2-{4-Methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}-*N*-[(1-trityl-1*H*-benzimidazol-6-yl)methyl]acetamide

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 1(xxiii) above.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.31 (s, 3H), 3.49 (s, 2H), 4.09 (d, 2H), 4.16 (d, 2H), 6.02 (d, 1H), 6.25 (t, 1H), 6.34 (s, 1H), 6.99 (t, 1H), 7.04 (d, 1H), 7.12-7.20 (m, 7H), 7.26-7.36 (m, 10H), 7.62 (d, 1H), 7.70 (d, 1H), 7.90 (s, 1H), 8.54 (s, 1H), 8.57 (d, 1H)

MS *m/z* 645 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxxiv) *tert*-Butyl (6-{{(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino)methyl}pyridin-3-yl)carbamate

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 1(xxiii) above.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.53 (m, 2H), 8.34 (d, 1H), 7.85 (d, 1H), 7.58-7.68 (m, 2H), 7.25 (m, 1H), 7.07-7.15 (m, 2H), 6.82 (s, 1H), 6.29 (t, 1H), 5.98 (d, 1H), 4.45 (d, 2H), 4.11 (d, 2H), 3.63 (s, 2H), 2.30 (s, 3H), 1.48 (s, 9H)

(xxxv) *tert*-Butyl (4-chloro-2-{{(1-[(2,2-difluoro-2-pyridin-2-ylethyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino}methyl)-benzyl)carbamate

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 1(xxiii) above.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.64 (d, 1H), 7.84 (t, 1H), 7.70 (d, 1H), 7.52 (bs, 1H), 7.40 (t, 1H), 7.31 (d, 1H), 7.22 (d, 1H), 7.10-7.17 (m, 2H), 6.37 (bs, 1H), 6.08 (d, 1H), 5.36 (bs, 1H), 4.36 (d, 2H), 4.25 (s, 2H), 3.87 (dt, 2H), 3.55 (s, 2H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 1.44 (s, 9H)

(xxxvi) *tert*-Butyl [4-chloro-2-{{(1-{{2,2-difluoro-2-(1-oxidopyridin-2-yl)-ethyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl}amino}-methyl)benzyl]carbamate

To a solution of *tert*-butyl (4-chloro-2-{{(1-[(2,2-difluoro-2-pyridin-2-ylethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino}-methyl)benzyl)carbamate (0.20 mmol; see Example 1(xxxv) above) in DCE (1 mL) was added mCPBA (0.29 mmol) and the resulting solution was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. Then, mCPBA (0.29 mmol) and 4,4'-thiobis(2-*tert*-butyl-5-methylphenol) (0.03 mmol), together with DCE (1 mL) were added and the resulting mixture was heated to 55°C for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM and washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (aq.) and Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>3</sub> (aq.). The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM and the combined organic layers were dried through a phase separator and concentrated. The title compound was then purified by Prep-HPLC.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.12 (br s, 1H), 7.71 (m, 1H), 7.45 (br s, 1H), 7.37 (m, 1H), 7.20-7.26 (m, 2H), 7.13-7.19 (m, 2H), 6.33 (bs, 1H), 6.02 (d, 1H), 5.36 (br s, 1H), 4.39 (d, 2H), 4.20-4.31 (m, 4H), 3.56 (s, 2H), 2.32 (s, 3H), 1.45 (s, 9H)

Example 2

Unless otherwise stated, the compounds (i) to (xi) listed below were prepared from the corresponding compounds of Example 1 by General Method A described below.

- 5 Compounds (xiii) and (xiv) below were prepared from the corresponding compounds of Example 1 by General Method B described below.

Unless otherwise stated, compounds (xv) to (xliii) were prepared from the corresponding compounds of Example 1 by General Method C described below.

10

## General Method A

- Palladium on carbon (10%, 5 mg) and HCl (conc., 2-3 drops) were added to a solution of the specific benzyloxycarbonyl-protected compound (0.06-0.007 mmol; see Example 1 above) in methanol (2 mL). The suspension  
15 was hydrogenated under atmospheric pressure at room temperature for 30 minutes. The suspension was filtered through Celite®, washed with methanol (3 x 5 mL) and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure.  
The residue was dissolved in a minimum volume of methanol and the deprotected product was precipitated from ethyl acetate. Yields were nearly  
20 quantitative.

## General Method B

- HCl gas was bubbled through a solution of the specific Boc-protected compound (0.06 mmol; see Example 1 above) in methanol (2 mL) for 5  
25 minutes. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the products as solids. Yields were nearly quantitative.

## General Method C

The specific Boc-protected compound (0.04 mmol; see Example 1 above) was dissolved in ethyl acetate saturated with HCl (2 mL) and stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent and excess of reagents were  
5 evaporated under reduced pressure to give the desired product.

(i) *N*-(4-Carbamimidoylbenzyl)-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-phenylmethanesulfonylamino-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide

The compound was further purified by Prep-HPLC to give the final product.

10  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  2.26 (s, 3H), 3.66 (s, 2H), 4.46 (s, 4H), 6.23 (d, 1H), 7.26-7.67 (m, 10H), 8.71 (br s, 1H), 9.13 (br s, 1H)  
MS  $m/z$  468.1 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(ii) 2-(1-Benzenesulfonylamino-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-  
15 *N*-(4-carbamimidoylbenzyl)acetamide  
 $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  2.18 (s, 3H), 3.39 (s, 2H), 4.35 (s, 2H), 6.17 (d, 1H), 7.26-7.66 (m, 9H), 8.70 (br s, 1H), 9.18 (br s, 1H)  
MS  $m/z$  454.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

20 (iii) *N*-(4-Carbamimidoylbenzyl)-2-[1-(4-methoxybenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide  
 $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  2.21 (s, 3H), 3.31 (s, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 4.32 (s, 2H), 6.17 (d, 1H), 6.85 (d, 2H), 7.26-7.51 (m, 3H), 7.61 (d, 2H), 7.81 (d, 2H), 8.69 (br s, 1H), 9.11 (br s, 1H)  
25 MS  $m/z$  484.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(iv) *N*-(4-Carbamimidoylbenzyl)-2-[1-(2-methoxy-4-methylbenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.37 (s, 3H), 3.41 (s, 2H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 4.38 (s, 2H), 6.22 (d, 1H), 6.76 (d, 1H), 7.00 (s, 1H), 7.46-7.53 (m, 4H), 7.74 (d, 1H), 8.75 (br s, 2H), 9.25 (br s, 2H)

MS *m/z* 498.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

5

(v) *N*-(4-Carbamimidoylbenzyl)-2-[1-(3,4-dichlorobenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide

The compound was further purified by Prep-HPLC to give the final product.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.26 (s, 3H), 3.41 (s, 2H), 4.43 (s, 2H), 6.23 (d, 1H), 7.37-7.93 (m, 9H), 8.73, (s, 1H), 9.27 (s, 1H)

10

MS *m/z* 522.0 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(vi) *N*-(4-Carbamimidoylbenzyl)-2-[1-(3-methoxybenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide

15 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.22 (s, 3H), 3.39 (s, 2H), 3.78 (s, 2H), 4.39 (s, 2H), 6.26 (d, 1H), 7.15 (d, 1H), 7.23 (d, 2H), 7.36 (t, 1H), 7.47 (t, 3H), 7.74 (d, 2H), 8.11 (br s, 1H), 8.76 (br s, 1H)

MS *m/z* 482.0 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

20 (vii) *N*-(4-Carbamimidoylbenzyl)-2-[1-(2,5-dimethylbenzenesulfonylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.20 (s, 3H), 2.24 (s, 3H), 2.61 (s, 3H), 3.38 (s, 2H), 4.39 (s, 2H), 6.18 (d, 1H), 7.22 (d, 1H), 7.32 (t, 2H), 7.47 (d, 3H), 7.74 (d, 1H), 8.72 (br s, 1H), 9.22 (br s, 1H)

25 MS *m/z* 482.1 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(viii) *N*-(4-Carbamimidoylbenzyl)-2-[4-methyl-1-(naphthalene-1-sulfonylamino)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.17 (s, 3H), 3.18 (s, 2H), 4.32 (s, 2H), 6.16 (d, 1H), 7.25 (d, 1H), 7.40 (d, 2H), 7.50 (t, 1H), 7.59-7.61 (m, 2H), 7.70 (d, 2H), 7.97-8.01 (m, 1H), 8.07 (d, 1H), 8.17 (d, 1H), 8.57-8.61 (m, 1H), 8.71 (br s, 1H), 9.18 (br s, 1H)

5 MS *m/z* 504.1 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(ix) *N*-(4-Carbamimidoylbenzyl)-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-phenethylamino-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.28 (s, 3H), 2.87 (t, 2H, *J* = 6.9Hz), 3.30-3.34 (m, 2H), 3.68 (s, 2H), 4.48 (s, 2H), 6.38 (d, 1H), 7.19-7.29 (m, 5H), 7.52 (d, 2H), 7.68 (d, 1H), 7.72 (d, 2H), 8.78 (br s, 1H), 9.24 (br s, 1H)

MS *m/z* 418.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(x) *N*-(4-Carbamimidoylbenzyl)-2-[4-methyl-2-oxo-1-(2-*o*-tolylethylamino)-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 1.30 (s, 2H), 2.27 (s, 2H), 2.81 (br s, 2H), 3.15 (br s, 2H), 3.63 (s, 3H), 4.46 (s, 3H), 6.30 (br s, 1H), 6.97-7.16 (m, 5H), 7.46-7.56 (m, 3H), 7.61 (br s, 1H), 7.68 (d, 2H), 8.71 (br s, 1H), 9.21 (br s, 1H)

20 MS *m/z* 432.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xi) *N*-(4-Carbamimidoylbenzyl)-2-{1-[2-(2,5-dimethylphenyl)ethylamino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.20 (s, 3H), 2.23 (s, 3H), 2.25 (s, 3H), 2.78 (t, 2H), 3.18 (t, 2H), 3.64 (s, 2H), 4.44 (s, 2H), 6.27 (d, 1H), 6.89 (d, 1H), 6.94-6.99 (m, 1H), 7.44 (d, 2H), 7.58 (d, 2H), 7.66 (d, 2H)

25 MS *m/z* 446.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xii) *N*-(2-Aminomethyl-5-chlorobenzyl)-2-[4-methyl-1-(naphthalene-1-sulfonylamino)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide

The Boc-protected specific amide (0.05 mmol; see Example 1 above) was dissolved in HCl/dioxane (2 mL, 4 M) and stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, 10% methanol in DCM + 1% TEA). The compound was dissolved in DCM and was washed with water (2x), dried through a phase separator and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give the product.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.15 (s, 3H), 3.23 (s, 2H), 4.20 (s, 2H), 4.33 (s, 2H), 5.98 (d, 1H), 6.88 (d, 1H), 7.34-7.38 (m, 2H), 7.43 (d, 1H), 7.48 (t, 1H), 7.59-7.65 (m, 2H), 8.00 (d, 2H), 8.13 (d, 1H), 8.73 (d, 1H)  
MS *m/z* 525.2 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xiii) *N*-(6-Aminopyridin-3-ylmethyl)-2-{1-[2-(5-fluoro-2-methylphenyl)ethylamino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.27 (s, 3H), 2.88 (s, 2H), 3.37 (s, 2H), 3.65 (s, 2H), 4.26 (s, 2H), 6.52 (d, 1H), 6.78 (s, 1H), 6.89 (d, 1H), 6.97 (d, 1H), 7.08 (dd, 1H), 7.78-7.88 (m, 4H)  
MS *m/z* 424.6 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xiv) *N*-(6-Aminopyridin-3-ylmethyl)-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[2-(2-trifluoromethylphenyl)ethylamino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.23 (s, 3H), 2.81-3.01 (m, 2H), 3.31 (s, 3H), 3.59 (s, 2H), 4.27 (s, 2H), 6.16-6.33 (m, 1H), 6.95-7.01 (m, 1H), 7.49-7.54 (m, 5H), 7.75-7.81 (m, 1H), 7.86-7.93 (m, 1H)  
MS *m/z* 460.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xv) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-[1-(benzylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide hydrochloride

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.21 (s, 3H), 3.60 (s, 2H), 4.11 (s, 2H), 4.27 (s, 2H), 4.43 (s, 2H), 6.16 (d, 1H), 7.28-7.39 (m, 7H), 7.42 (d, 1H), 7.46-7.48 (m, 1H)

MS *m/z* 425.2 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xvi) *N*-[2-({[Amino(imino)methyl]amino}oxy)ethyl]-2-[1-(benzylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide hydrochloride

Prepared according to General Method C above, except that the reaction was stirred for 7 hours at room temperature.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.27 (s, 3H), 3.52 (t, 2H), 3.61 (s, 2H), 3.98 (t, 2H), 4.18 (s, 2H), 5.51 (s, 1H), 6.22 (d, 1H), 7.29-7.37 (m, 5H), 7.39 (d, 1H)

MS *m/z* 373.1 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xvii) *N*-[(6-Amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-[1-(benzylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide hydrochloride

Prepared according to General Method C above, except that the reaction was stirred for 20 hours at room temperature.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.22 (s, 3H), 2.51 (s, 3H), 3.58 (s, 2H), 4.13 (s, 2H), 4.26 (s, 2H), 6.15 (d, 1H), 6.82 (d, 1H), 7.27-7.36 (m, 6H), 7.87 (d, 1H)

MS *m/z* 392 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xviii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide hydrochloride

Prepared according to General Method C above, except that the reaction was stirred for 90 minutes at room temperature.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.24 (s, 3H), 2.86 (t, 2H), 3.32-3.34 (m, 2H), 3.61 (s, 2H), 4.25 (s, 2H), 4.42 (s, 2H), 6.34 (d, 1H), 7.17-7.25 (m, 3H), 7.26-7.30 (m, 2H), 7.34 (dd, 1H), 7.40-7.47 (m, 2H), 7.63 (d, 1H)  
MS *m/z* 439 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

5

(xix) *N*-[(6-Amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide hydrochloride  
Prepared according to General Method C above, except that the reaction was stirred for 90 minutes at room temperature.

10 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.26 (s, 3H), 2.51 (s, 3H), 2.86 (t, 2H), 3.31-3.34 (m, 2H), 3.60 (s, 2H), 4.27 (s, 2H), 6.34 (d, 1H), 6.81 (d, 1H), 7.17-7.25 (m, 3H), 7.26-7.31 (m, 2H), 7.63 (d, 1H), 7.86 (d, 1H)  
MS *m/z* 406 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

15 (xx) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(3-methoxybenzyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide hydrochloride  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.12 (s, 3H), 3.51 (s, 2H), 3.68 (s, 3H), 4.00 (s, 2H), 4.17 (s, 2H), 4.33 (s, 2H), 6.07 (d, 1H), 6.74-6.82 (m, 3H), 7.13 (t, 1H), 7.25-7.29 (m, 2H), 7.34 (d, 1H), 7.37 (s, 1H)  
20 MS *m/z* 457 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxi) *N*-[(6-Amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(3-methoxybenzyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide hydrochloride  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.23 (s, 3H), 2.52 (s, 3H), 3.60 (s, 2H), 3.77 (s, 3H), 4.11 (s, 2H), 4.27 (s, 2H), 6.17 (d, 1H), 6.80-6.92 (m, 4H), 7.23 (t, 1H), 7.37 (d, 1H), 7.87 (s, 1H)  
25 MS *m/z* 422 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

Prepared according to General Method C above, except that the reaction was stirred for 3 days at room temperature.

5  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$ : 8.92 (s, 1H), 8.82 (d, 1H), 8.66 (d, 1H), 8.08 (dd, 1H), 7.54 (d, 1H), 7.48 (d, 1H), 7.44 (d, 1H), 7.38 (dd, 1H), 6.22 (d, 1H), 4.43 (s, 4H), 4.28 (s, 2H), 3.58 (s, 2H), 2.20 (s, 3H)

MS  $m/z$  428 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>

10 (xxiii) *N*-[(6-Amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

Prepared according to General Method C above, except that the reaction was stirred for 3 days at room temperature.

15  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$ : 8.92 (s, 1H), 8.83 (d, 1H), 8.66 (d, 1H), 8.07 (t, 1H), 7.87 (d, 1H), 7.55 (d, 1H), 6.85 (d, 1H), 6.23 (d, 1H), 4.90 (d, 2H), 4.44 (s, 2H), 4.26 (s, 2H), 3.56 (s, 2H), 2.53 (s, 3H), 2.19 (s, 3H)

MS  $m/z$  393 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>

20 (xxiv) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(2-methoxypyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide  
acetate

Prepared according to General Method C above, except that the reaction was stirred for 3 days at room temperature. The crude product was purified by preparative HPLC.

25  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$ : 8.03 (dd, 1H), 7.52 (dd, 1H), 7.34-7.43 (m, 3H), 7.30 (dd, 1H), 6.85 (dd, 1H), 6.18 (d, 1H), 4.38 (s, 2H), 4.13 (s, 2H), 4.08 (s, 2H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 3.53 (s, 2H), 2.20 (s, 3H), 1.89 (s, 3H)

MS  $m/z$  458 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>

(xxv) *N*-[(6-Amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-[(2-methoxy-pyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide acetate

Prepared according to General Method C above, except that the reaction  
5 was stirred for 3 days at room temperature. The crude product was purified by preparative HPLC.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 8.06 (dd, 1H), 7.54 (dd, 1H), 7.37-7.41 (m, 2H), 6.88 (dd, 1H), 6.41 (d, 1H), 6.20 (d, 1H), 4.23 (s, 2H), 4.15 (s, 2H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 3.54 (s, 2H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 2.23 (s, 3H), 1.97 (s, 3H)

10 MS *m/z* 423 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxvi) *N*-[(6-Amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-[5-(benzylamino)-2-methyl-6-oxocyclohexa-1,3-dien-1-yl]acetamide hydrochloride

Prepared according to General Method C above, except that the reaction  
15 was stirred overnight at room temperature.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.22 (s, 3H), 2.45 (s, 3H), 2.56 (s, 3H), 3.54 (br s, 2H), 4.11 (br s, 2H), 4.32 (s, 2H), 6.14 (br s, 1H), 6.68 (s, 1H), 7.27-7.36 (m, 6H)

20 (xxxvii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-methoxybenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 2 (xxvi) above.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.24 (s, 3H), 3.61 (s, 2H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 3.80  
25 (s, 2H), 4.18 (s, 2H), 4.42 (s, 2H), 6.15 (d, 1H), 6.80 (d, 1H), 6.89 (s, 1H), 7.25 (d, 1H), 7.36 (d, 1H), 7.41 (dd, 1H), 7.84 (d, 1H), 8.52 (s, 1H), 8.47 (s, 2H)

MS *m/z* 422 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxxviii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 2 (xxvi) above.

5  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  2.23 (s, 3H), 3.62 (s, 2H), 3.94 (s, 2H), 4.20 (s, 2H), 4.51 (s, 2H), 6.17 (d, 1H), 7.39 (d, 1H), 7.40-7.43 (m, 1H), 7.54-7.62 (m, 3H), 7.86 (d, 1H), 8.46-8.50 (m, 2H)  
MS  $m/z$  460 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>

10 (xxxix) *N*-(1*H*-Benzimidazol-6-ylmethyl)-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

The compound of Example 1 (xxxiii) above (38 mg. 0.059 mmol) was reacted with TFA:water:thioanisole:1,2-ethanedithiol (2 mL of 35:2:2:1) for 3 hours. Acetic acid was added to the reaction mixture before the solvent  
15 was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with diethyl ether and the crude product was purified by preparative HPLC in order to provide the title compound.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  2.24 (s, 3H), 3.64 (s, 2H), 4.16 (s, 2H), 4.51 (s, 2H), 6.16 (d, 1H), 7.24 (d, 1H), 7.35 (d, 1H), 7.38 (dd, 1H), 7.54-7.58  
20 (m, 2H), 7.78 (d, 1H), 8.13 (s, 1H), 7.44-7.46 (m, 2H)  
MS  $m/z$  403 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>

(xl) *N*-[(5-Aminopyridin-2-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

25 Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 2 (xxvi) above.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  8.91 (s, 1H), 8.82 (d, 1H), 8.68 (d, 1H), 8.05-8.09 (m, 2H), 7.73 (dd, 1H), 7.67 (d, 1H), 7.58 (d, 1H), 6.28 (d, 1H), 4.58 (s, 2H), 4.49 (s, 2H), 3.62 (s, 2H), 2.25 (s, 3H)

(xli) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(2,2-difluoro-2-pyridin-2-ylethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 2 (xxvi) above.

- 5  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  8.73 (m, 1H), 8.21 (m, 1H), 7.95 (m, 1H), 7.73 (m, 1H), 7.45 (m, d, 1H), 7.40-7.44 (m, 2H), 7.35 (dd, 1H), 6.23 (dd, 1H), 4.42 (s, 2H), 4.26 (s, 2H), 3.90 (m, 2H), 3.59 (s, 2H), 2.23 (s, 3H)  
MS  $m/z$  474 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>

- 10 (xlii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[2,2-difluoro-2-(1-oxido-pyridin-2-yl)ethyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide

Prepared according to the procedure described in respect of Example 2 (xxvi) above.

- 15  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  8.26 (d, 1H), 7.92 (dd, 1H), 7.60-7.70 (m, 2H), 7.49 (d, 1H), 7.36-7.43 (m, 2H), 7.16 (d, 1H), 6.05 (d, 1H), 4.43 (s, 2H), 4.26 (s, 2H), 4.20 (m, 2H), 3.54 (s, 2H), 2.20 (s, 3H)  
MS  $m/z$  492 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>

- 20 (xlili) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[(2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide acetate

- Prepared from the compound of Example 1(xxvi) by using General Method B above and employing an extended reaction time. The title compound was  
25 isolated by Prep-HPLC.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  7.51 (d, 1H), 7.43 (dd, 1H), 7.34-7.44 (m, 3H), 7.30 (d, 1H), 6.28 (t, 1H), 6.22 (d, 1H), 4.38 (s, 2H), 4.14 (s, 2H), 3.97 (s, 2H), 3.50 (s, 2H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 1.90 (s, 3H)  
MS  $m/z$  442 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>

Example 3

Compounds (i) to (xiii) below were prepared according to the following general method.

- The relevant esters (as obtained from Preparation 4 above) were dissolved in THF (4mL). Aqueous LiOH (2.5 mL of 0.5 M, 1.3 mmol) was added to the resultant solution. The reaction mixtures were shaken at room temperature for 5 to 25 hours. The solvent was then evaporated under reduced pressure to give the corresponding carboxylic acids as lithium salts, which were stored at -80C and used then without further purification.
- The crude carboxylic acid salts were dissolved in DMF (1 mL) and *N*-methylmorpholine (88  $\mu$ L, 0.8 mmol) was added. TBTU (192 mg, 0.6 mmol) was dissolved in 0.5 mL of DMF and added to each reaction mixture, and the reaction mixtures were then shaken at room temperature for 30 min. A solution of 2-[2-(aminomethyl)-4-chlorophenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide (1 mol equiv; see List 5 above) in DMF (1 mL) was then added to each reaction mixture. The reaction mixtures were shaken at room temperature overnight before being filtered and evaporated to dryness. The crude mixtures were purified by preparative HPLC (see General Experimental Details above) to give the amides listed below as oils or solids. The yields over three steps for these amides were 7 to 29% (Purity >85%; UV at 215nm).

(i) 2-{4-Chloro-2-[(1-(isobutylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino)methyl]phenoxy}-*N*-ethylacetamide

- $^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz, DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  8.29 (t, 1H), 8.04 (t, 1H), 7.56 (d, 1H), 7.26 (m, 2H), 6.92 (d, 1H), 6.42 (t, 1H), 6.11 (d, 1H), 4.46 (s, 2H), 4.33 (d, 2H), 3.47 (s, 2H), 3.10 (q, 2H), 2.71 (t, 2H), 2.12 (s, 3H), 1.68 (m, 1H), 0.99 (t, 3H), 0.92 (d, 6H).

MS  $m/z$  463.4 (M+H) $^+$

(ii) 2-[4-Chloro-2-({[(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{{[(1-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-5-yl)-methyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl)phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.28 (t, 1H), 8.04 (t, 1H), 7.60 (d, 1H),  
 5 7.51 (m, 4H), 7.42 (t, 1H), 7.26 (m, 2H), 7.19 (d, 1H), 6.91 (m, 2H), 6.35 (d, 1H), 5.99 (d, 1H), 4.46 (s, 2H), 4.32 (d, 2H), 4.22 (d, 2H), 3.44 (s, 2H), 3.09 (q, 2H), 2.09 (s, 3H), 0.98 (t, 3H).

MS *m/z* 563. (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

10 (iii) 2-{4-Chloro-2-[(1-{{[2,5-dimethyl-1-(4*H*-1,2,4-triazol-4-yl)-1*H*-pyrrol-3-yl]methyl}amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]-acetyl]amino)methyl]phenoxy}-*N*-ethylacetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 9.01 (s, 2H), 8.32 (t, 1H), 8.04 (t, 1H),  
 15 7.42 (d, 1H), 7.26 (m, 2H), 6.92 (d, 1H), 6.37 (t, 1H), 6.10 (d, 1H), 5.97 (s, 1H), 4.46 (s, 2H), 4.33 (d, 2H), 3.83 (d, 2H), 3.48 (s, 2H), 3.10 (q, 2H), 2.13 (s, 3H), 1.91 (s, 3H), 1.77 (s, 1H), 0.99 (t, 3H).

MS *m/z* 581.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(iv) 2-(1-{{[(4-Benzoyl-1-methyl-1*H*-pyrrol-2-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-  
 20 2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-*N*-{5-chloro-2-[2-(ethylamino)-2-oxoethoxy]benzyl}acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.31 (t, 1H), 8.05 (t, 1H), 7.70 (d, 2H),  
 7.58 (m, 1H), 7.47 (m, 3H), 7.29 (m, 3H), 6.92 (d, 1H), 6.70 (t, 1H), 6.30 (s, 1H), 6.05 (d, 1H), 4.47 (s, 2H), 4.33 (d, 2H), 4.10 (d, 2H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 3.49  
 25 (s, 2H), 3.11 (q, 2H), 2.12 (s, 3H), 1.00 (t, 3H).

MS *m/z* 604.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(v) 2-(4-Chloro-2-{{(1-[(2,3-dihydro-1-benzofuran-5-ylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino}methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.29 (t, 1H), 8.05 (t, 1H), 7.40 (d, 1H),  
5 7.26 (m, 2H), 7.20 (s, 1H), 7.00 (d, 1H), 6.92 (d, 1H), 6.68 (d, 1H), 6.59 (t, 1H), 6.04 (d, 1H), 4.50 (m, 4H), 4.33 (d, 2H), 3.96 (d, 2H), 3.48 (s, 2H), 3.12 (m, 4H), 2.11 (s, 3H), 1.00 (t, 3H).

MS *m/z* 538.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

10 (vi) 2-[4-Chloro-2-{{(1-[(2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl}phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.29 (t, 1H), 8.05 (m, 1H), 7.28 (m, 2H),  
7.22 (d, 1H), 6.92 (d, 1H), 6.84 (t, 1H), 6.01 (d, 1H), 4.47 (s, 2H), 4.33 (d,  
15 2H), 4.19 (d, 2H), 3.48 (s, 2H), 3.11 (q, 2H), 2.55 (s, 3H), 2.11 (s, 3H), 2.03 (s, 3H), 1.00 (t, 3H).

MS *m/z* 532.2 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(vii) 2-[4-Chloro-2-{{(1-[(1,5-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl}phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.29 (t, 1H), 8.05 (m, 1H), 7.36 (d, 1H),  
7.26 (m, 2H), 7.20 (s, 1H), 6.92 (d, 1H), 6.39 (t, 1H), 6.05 (d, 1H), 4.47 (s,  
2H), 4.33 (d, 2H), 3.86 (d, 2H), 3.67 (s, 3H), 3.48 (s, 2H), 3.11 (q, 2H), 2.13  
25 (s, 3H), 2.12 (s, 3H), 1.00 (t, 3H).

MS *m/z* 514.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(viii) 2-{4-Chloro-2-[(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-([1-(phenylsulfonyl)-1*H*-pyrrol-2-yl)methyl]amino)-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl]amino)methyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethylacetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.26 (t, 1H), 8.04 (t, 1H), 7.96 (d, 2H),  
 5 7.27 (t, 1H), 7.61 (t, 2H), 7.43 (dd, 1H), 7.25 (m, 2H), 6.93 (m, 2H), 6.78 (t, 1H), 6.23 (t, 1H), 6.10 (m, 1H), 5.96 (d, 1H), 4.47 (s, 2H), 4.32 (d, 2H), 4.23 (d, 2H), 3.44 (s, 2H), 3.10 (q, 2H), 2.08 (s, 3H), 0.99 (t, 3H).  
 MS *m/z* 626.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

10 (ix) 2-[4-Chloro-2-([(1-[(3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino)methyl]phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 1.01 (t, 3H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 2.12 (s, 3H),  
 2.16 (s, 3H), 3.12 (p, 2H), 3.47 (s, 2H), 3.89 (d, 2H), 4.32 (d, 2H), 4.48 (s,  
 15 2H), 6.02 (d, 1H), 6.67 (t, 1H), 6.93 (d, 1H), 7.21-7.31 (m, 3H), 8.05 (t, 1H), 8.31 (t, 1H)  
 MS *m/z* 516.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(x) 2-[4-Chloro-2-([(1-[(4-chloro-2-phenyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino)methyl]-phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 1.01 (t, 3H), 2.11 (s, 3H), 3.13 (p, 2H),  
 3.49 (s, 2H), 4.12 (d, 2H), 4.33 (d, 2H), 4.48 (s, 2H), 6.02 (d, 1H), 6.91-6.95  
 (m, 1H), 6.98 (t, 1H), 7.20 (d, 1H), 7.25-7.28 (m, 2H), 7.37 (t, 1H), 7.46 (t,  
 25 2H), 7.90 (d, 2H), 8.05 (t, 1H), 8.31 (t, 1H), 12.98 (s, 1H)  
 MS *m/z* 539.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xi) 2-{1-[(2,1,3-Benzoxadiazol-5-ylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}-*N*-{5-chloro-2-[2-(ethylamino)-2-oxoethoxy]benzyl}-acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 1.00 (t, 3H), 2.09 (s, 3H), 3.10 (p, 2H),  
5 3.46 (s, 2H), 4.25 (d, 2H), 4.32 (d, 2H), 4.48 (s, 2H), 6.02 (d, 1H), 6.93 (d, 1H), 7.14 (t, 1H), 7.24-7.28 (m, 2H), 7.45 (d, 1H), 7.68 (d, 1H), 7.83 (s, 1H), 8.00-8.07 (m, 2H), 8.28 (t, 1H)

MS *m/z* 539.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

10 (xii) 2-(4-Chloro-2-{[({4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyrazin-2-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide

MS *m/z* 499.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xiii) 2-(4-Chloro-2-{[({1-[(cyclopentylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 1.00 (t, 3H), 1.18-1.26 (m, 2H), 1.43-1.59 (m, 4H), 1.69-1.77 (m, 2H), 1.91-1.99 (m, 1H), 2.12 (s, 3H), 2.83 (t, 2H), 3.10 (p, 2H), 3.47 (s, 2H), 4.32 (d, 2H), 4.46 (s, 2H), 6.12 (d, 1H), 6.39 (t, 1H), 6.92 (d, 1H), 7.24-7.28 (m, 2H), 7.57 (d, 1H), 8.03 (t, 1H), 8.29 (t, 20 1H)

MS *m/z* 489.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

#### Example 4

Compounds (i) to (xxix) below were prepared according to the following  
25 general method.

The relevant esters (as obtained from Preparation 4 above) were dissolved in THF (4mL). Aqueous LiOH (2.5 mL of 0.5 M, 1.3 mmol) was added to the resultant solution. The reaction mixtures were shaken at room temperature for 5 to 25 hours. The solvent was then evaporated under

reduced pressure to give the corresponding carboxylic acids as lithium salts, which were stored at -80C and used then without further purification.

The crude carboxylic acid salts were dissolved in DMF (1 mL) and *N*-methylmorpholine (88  $\mu$ L, 0.8 mmol) was added. TBTU (192 mg, 5 0.6 mmol) was dissolved in 0.5 mL of DMF and added to each reaction mixture, and the reaction mixtures were then shaken at room temperature for 30 min. A solution of the specific amine (1 mol equiv; see List 5 above) in DMF (1 mL) was then added to each reaction mixture. The reaction mixtures were shaken at room temperature overnight before being filtered 10 and evaporated to dryness.

The resulting residues (Boc-protected amides) were dissolved in TFA (1.5 mL), shaken at room temperature for 1 hour and then concentrated in vacuo. The crude mixtures were purified by preparative HPLC (see General Experimental Details above) to give the amides listed below as oils or 15 solids. The yields over four steps for these amides were 2 to 47% (Purity >87%; UV at 215nm).

(i) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(5-pyridin-2-yl-2-thienyl)methyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide

20  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz, DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  2.11 (s, 3H), 3.48 (s, 2H), 3.83 (s, 2H), 4.27-4.35 (m, 4H), 6.03 (d, 1H), 6.91 (d, 1H), 7.03 (t, 1H), 7.24-7.29 (m, 2H), 7.30 (s, 1H), 7.38-7.42 (m, 2H), 7.60 (d, 1H), 7.81 (dt, 1H), 7.86 (d, 1H), 8.38 (t, 1H), 8.51 (d, 1H).

MS  $m/z$  508.4 (M+H) $^+$

25

(ii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-[(5-chloro-1,3-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz, DMSO- $\text{d}_6$ )  $\delta$  2.04 (s, 3H), 2.13 (s, 3H), 3.48 (s, 2H), 3.67 (s, 3H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 3.88 (d, 2H), 4.29 (d, 2H), 6.02 (d, 1H), 6.61 (t, 1H), 7.17 (d, 1H), 7.24-7.28 (m, 2H), 7.39 (d, 1H), 8.32 (t, 1H)

MS  $m/z$  476.7 (M+H) $^+$

5

(iii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(6-chloro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz, DMSO- $\text{d}_6$ )  $\delta$  8.32 (t, 1H), 7.35-7.41 (m, 2H), 7.24-7.29 (m, 2H), 7.04 (s, 1H), 7.01 (s, 1H), 6.87 (t, 1H), 6.06 (m, 3H), 4.29 (d, 2H), 4.10 (d, 2H), 3.73 (s, 2H), 3.47 (s, 2H), 2.13 (s, 3H)

10

MS  $m/z$  502.7 (M+H) $^+$

(iv) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(1-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide

15

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz, DMSO- $\text{d}_6$ )  $\delta$  7.79 (t, 1H), 7.18 (d, 1H), 7.09 (s, 1H), 6.80 (t, 1H), 6.74 (s, 1H), 6.10 (s, 1H), 5.99 (d, 1H), 5.62 (s, 2H), 4.11 (m, 4H), 3.66 (s, 2H), 2.27 (s, 3H), 2.13 (s, 3H), 2.09 (s, 3H)

20

MS  $m/z$  409.8 (M+H) $^+$

(v) *N*-[(6-Amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(cyclohexylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (500 MHz, DMSO- $\text{d}_6$ )  $\delta$  7.76 (t, 1H), 7.52 (d, 1H), 6.41 (t, 1H), 6.09-6.13 (m, 2H), 5.65 (s, 2H), 4.10 (d, 2H), 3.39 (s, 2H), 2.71 (t, 2H), 2.25 (s, 3H), 2.11 (s, 6H), 1.77 (d, 2H), 1.57-1.71 (m, 3H), 1.39 (m, 1H), 1.10-1.25 (m, 3H), 0.88-0.98 (m, 2H)

25

MS  $m/z$  412.4 (M+H) $^+$

(vi) *N*-[(6-Amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-[(4-methyl-3,4-dihydro-2*H*-1,4-benzoxazin-7-yl)methyl]amino)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide

MS *m/z* 477.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

5

(vii) *N*-[(6-Amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(4-cyano-benzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 7.74-7.80 (m, 3H), 7.51 (d, 2H), 7.33-7.37 (m, 1H), 7.06 (t, 1H), 6.10 (s, 1H), 6.00 (d, 1H), 5.63 (s, 2H), 4.15 (d, 10 2H), 4.11 (d, 2H), 3.38 (s, 2H), 2.26 (s, 3H), 2.13 (s, 3H), 2.08 (s, 3H)

MS *m/z* 430.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(viii) *N*-[(6-Amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenoxybenzyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

15 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 7.95 (t, 1H), 7.45 (d, 1H), 7.25-7.36 (m, 4H), 7.08-7.19 (m, 3H), 6.96 (t, 1H), 6.89 (d, 1H), 6.81 (d, 1H), 6.21 (d, 1H), 6.00 (d, 1H), 5.69 (s, 2H), 4.13 (d, 2H), 4.03 (d, 2H), 3.36 (s, 2H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.09 (s, 3H)

MS *m/z* 484.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

20

(ix) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(1-ethyl-3-methyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide

25 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.33 (t, 1H), 7.46 (s, 1H), 7.21-7.41 (m, 4H), 6.45 (t, 1H), 6.05 (d, 1H), 4.29 (d, 2H), 3.97 (q, 2H), 3.88 (d, 2H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 3.48 (s, 2H), 2.13 (s, 3H), 2.08 (s, 3H), 1.28 (t, 3H)

MS *m/z* 456.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(x) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(4-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide

MS *m/z* 428.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

5 (xi) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(5-chloro-1-methyl-3-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-pyridin-3-yl)acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.11 (s, 3H), 3.46 (s, 2H), 3.73 (s, 2H), 3.80 (s, 3H), 4.05 (d, 2H), 4.30 (d, 2H), 5.97 (d, 1H), 6.85 (t, 1H), 7.08 (d,  
10 1H), 7.26 (s, 2H), 7.36-7.41 (m, 3H), 7.44 (t, 1H), 7.78 (d, 2H), 8.33 (t, 1H)

MS *m/z* 538.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(2-morpholin-4-ylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide

15 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.13 (s, 3H), 3.08 (t, 4H), 3.46 (s, 2H), 3.66-3.76 (m, 6H), 4.12 (d, 2H), 4.30 (d, 2H), 6.07 (d, 1H), 6.97-7.04 (m, 2H), 7.23-7.29 (m, 2H), 7.40 (t, 2H), 7.69 (dd, 1H), 8.21 (dd, 1H), 8.33 (t, 1H)

MS *m/z* 510.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

20

(xiii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(3,3-dimethylbutyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 0.86 (s, 9H), 1.36 (t, 2H), 2.14 (t, 3H), 2.86-2.96 (m, 2H), 3.48 (s, 2H), 3.80 (s, 2H), 4.30 (d, 2H), 6.16 (d, 1H),  
25 6.36 (t, 1H), 7.22-7.29 (m, 2H), 7.39 (d, 1H), 7.60 (d, 1H), 8.37 (t, 1H)

MS *m/z* 419.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xiv) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(5-chloro-2-thienyl)-methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide

MS  $m/z$  464.7 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xv) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(3-cyano-4-fluorobenzyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

5 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  2.11 (s, 3H), 3.46 (s, 2H), 3.74 (s, 2H), 4.14 (d, 2H), 4.29 (d, 2H), 6.05 (d, 1H), 7.02 (t, 1H), 7.15-7.20 (m, 1H), 7.22-7.30 (m, 2H), 7.36-7.49 (m, 3H), 7.67-7.74 (m, 1H), 7.88 (dd, 1H), 8.32 (t, 1H)

MS  $m/z$  467.7 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

10

(xvi) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(5-methyl-3-phenylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide

15 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  2.12 (s, 3H), 2.17 (s, 3H), 3.46 (s, 2H), 3.73 (s, 2H), 4.00 (d, 2H), 4.30 (d, 2H), 5.99 (d, 1H), 6.87 (t, 1H), 7.14 (d, 1H), 7.24-7.29 (m, 2H), 7.39 (d, 1H), 7.49-7.56 (m, 3H), 7.79-7.85 (m, 2H), 8.37 (t, 1H).

MS  $m/z$  505.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

20 (xvii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  2.11 (t, 3H), 3.47 (s, 2H), 3.83 (s, 2H), 4.16 (d, 2H), 4.30 (d, 2H), 6.04 (d, 1H), 6.96 (t, 1H), 7.23-7.37 (m, 6H), 7.38-7.49 (m, 4H), 8.38 (t, 1H)

25 MS  $m/z$  509.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xviii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(5-chloro-2-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.12 (s, 3H), 3.46 (s, 2H), 3.86 (s, 2H), 4.14 (d, 2H), 4.29 (d, 2H), 6.07 (d, 1H), 6.98 (t, 1H), 7.22 (t, 1H), 7.25-7.29 (m, 2H), 7.35-7.44 (m, 3H), 7.49 (dd, 1H), 8.35 (t, 1H).

MS *m/z* 477.3 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

5

(xix) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-[(2-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.12 (s, 3H), 2.22 (s, 3H), 3.48 (s, 2H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 3.92 (d, 2H), 4.29 (d, 2H), 6.05 (d, 1H), 6.64 (t, 1H), 6.71 (s, 1H), 7.24-7.27 (m, 2H), 7.37-7.41 (m, 2H), 8.32 (t, 1H).

10

MS *m/z* 428.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xx) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(2-fluoro-5-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

15 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.12 (s, 3H), 3.47 (s, 2H), 3.69 (s, 3H), 3.83 (s, 2H), 4.13 (d, 2H), 4.30 (d, 2H), 6.04 (d, 1H), 6.83-6.87 (m, 1H), 6.90-6.94 (m, 2H), 7.07 (t, 1H), 7.26-7.31 (m, 2H), 7.36 (d, 1H), 7.40 (d, 1H), 8.38 (t, 1H).

MS *m/z* 473.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

20

(xxi) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-1-[(2-morpholin-4-ylbenzyl)amino]-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

MS *m/z* 509.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

25 (xxii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-[(1,3-dimethyl-5-morpholin-4-yl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 1.94 (s, 3H), 2.14 (s, 3H), 2.98-3.02 (m, 4H), 3.50 (s, 2H), 3.55 (s, 3H), 3.65-3.69 (m, 4H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 3.91 (d,

2H), 4.29 (d, 2H), 6.05 (d, 1H), 6.41 (t, 1H), 7.23-7.27 (m, 2H), 7.29 (d, 1H), 7.39 (d, 1H), 8.35 (t, 1H).

MS  $m/z$  527.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

- 5 (xxiii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(quinolin-8-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

MS  $m/z$  475.8 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

- (xxiv) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-[4-methyl-2-oxo-1-({[5-(2-thienyl)isoxazol-3-yl]methyl}amino)-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.11 (s, 3H), 3.47 (s, 2H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 4.23 (d, 2H), 4.28 (d, 2H), 6.05 (d, 1H), 6.91 (s, 1H), 7.14 (t, 1H), 7.22-7.27 (m, 3H), 7.39 (d, 1H), 7.46 (d, 1H), 7.69 (d, 1H), 7.82 (d, 1H), 8.33 (t, 1H).

MS  $m/z$  497.7 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

15

- (xxv) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylpropyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 1.25 (d, 3H), 2.13 (s, 3H), 2.86-2.92 (m, 1H), 3.03-3.09 (m, 1H), 3.13-3.19 (m, 1H), 3.46 (s, 2H), 3.75 (s, 2H), 4.30 (d, 2H), 6.11 (d, 1H), 6.38 (t, 1H), 6.99-7.05 (m, 2H), 7.18-7.32 (m, 5H), 7.37 (dd, 1H), 7.48 (d, 1H), 8.35 (t, 1H).

20

MS  $m/z$  437.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

- (xxvi) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-{1-[(bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-en-2-ylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide

25

MS  $m/z$  421.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

(xxvii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-[1-({3-[(2-chloro-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methoxy]benzyl}amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide

MS *m/z* 552.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

5

(xxviii) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{{(3-methyl-5-phenylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl}amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.09 (s, 3H), 2.19 (s, 3H), 2.24 (s, 3H),  
10 3.42 (s, 2H), 3.76 (s, 2H), 4.06 (d, 2H), 4.28 (d, 2H), 5.99 (d, 1H), 6.91 (t, 1H), 7.03 (d, 1H), 7.07 (s, 1H), 7.23 (d, 1H), 7.25 (d, 1H), 7.49-7.56 (m, 3H), 7.76 (d, 1H), 7.80 (d, 1H), 8.36 (t, 1H).

MS *m/z* 486.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

15 (xxix) *N*-[2-(Aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-(1-{{(1,3-dimethyl-5-morpholin-4-yl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide

MS *m/z* 508.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

20 Example 5

The following compounds were prepared, from appropriate intermediates (such as those described hereinbefore), according to or by analogy with methods described herein:

(1) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{{(3-methyl-  
25 5-phenylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl}amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;

(2) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{{(5-chloro-2-thienyl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;

- (3) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(5-chloro-2-phenyl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (4) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(1,5-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- 5 (5) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(4-methyl-1-{{[(4-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}-methyl)phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (6) 2-(4-chloro-2-{{[(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-2-yl)methyl]amino]-1,2-10 dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (7) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(4-methyl-1-{{[(1-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl]-amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}-methyl)phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (8) 2-(1-{{[(6-chloro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-15 1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-*N*-{5-chloro-2-[2-(ethylamino)-2-oxoethoxy]-benzyl}acetamide;
- (9) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(4-methyl-1-{{[(2-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}-methyl)phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- 20 (10) 2-(4-chloro-2-{{[(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenoxybenzyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (11) 2-{4-chloro-2-[[1-({3-[(2-chloro-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methoxy]benzyl}-amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl}amino)methyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- 25 (12) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{{[(2-morpholin-4-ylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (13) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-(1-{{[(5-chloro-1,3-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;

- (14) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{{(1-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-5-yl)methyl}amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (15) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{{(1-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl}amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- 5 (16) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-{{1-[(3-cyano-4-fluorobenzyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (17) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-(1-{{(1,3-dimethyl-5-morpholin-4-yl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- 10 (18) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-[4-methyl-2-oxo-1-({[5-(2-thienyl)isoxazol-3-yl]methyl}amino)-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide;
- (19) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-{{1-[(4-cyanobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (20) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(1-{{(1,3-dimethyl-5-morpholin-4-yl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}-methyl)phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- 15 (21) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{{(1,3-dimethyl-5-morpholin-4-yl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- 20 (22) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-(1-{{(1,5-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (23) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{{(1,5-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- 25 (24) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{{(1,5-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl}amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;

- (25) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(1-{[(1-ethyl-3-methyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl)-phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (26) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(1-ethyl-3-methyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (27) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(1-ethyl-3-methyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- 10 (28) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(1-ethyl-3-methyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (29) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(1-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- 15 (30) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(1-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (31) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[(1-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (32) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[(1-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- 20 (33) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[(1-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (34) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(2,1,3-benzoxadiazol-5-yl-methyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- 25 (35) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-{1-[(2,1,3-benzoxadiazol-5-yl-methyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (36) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(2,1,3-benzoxadiazol-5-yl)methyl]amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- 30

- (37) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(2,1,3-benzoxadiazol-5-yl-methyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (38) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (39) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (40) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (41) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (42) 2-(4-chloro-2-{[(1-[(2-chloro-5-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (43) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(2-chloro-5-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (44) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(2-chloro-5-fluorobenzyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (45) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(2-chloro-5-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (46) 2-(4-chloro-2-{[(1-[(2-fluoro-5-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (47) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-{1-[(2-fluoro-5-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (48) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(2-fluoro-5-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (49) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(2-fluoro-5-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;

- (50) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(2-methoxypyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (51) 2-(1-{[(2-methoxypyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-*N*-[2-(1*H*-tetrazol-1-yl)benzyl]acetamide;
- 5 (52) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(2-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (53) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(2-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- 10 (54) 2-(4-chloro-2-{[(4-methyl-1-[(2-morpholin-4-ylbenzyl)amino]-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (55) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-1-[(2-morpholin-4-ylbenzyl)amino]-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (56) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-1-[(2-morpholin-4-ylbenzyl)amino]-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- 15 (57) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(4-methyl-1-{[(2-morpholin-4-ylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl)phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (58) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(2-morpholin-4-ylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- 20 (59) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(2-morpholin-4-ylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (60) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenoxybenzyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (61) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenoxybenzyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (62) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenoxybenzyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- 30

- (63) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (64) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-(1-{[(3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- 5 (65) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (66) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(3-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- 10 (67) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-{1-[(3-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (68) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(3-methoxybenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (69) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(3-methoxybenzyl)-
- 15 amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (70) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(3-methyl-5-phenylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (71) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(4-methyl-1-{[(3-methyl-5-phenylisoxazol-4-yl)-
- 20 methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl)-phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (72) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(3-methyl-5-phenylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- 25 (73) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(4-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (74) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(4-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;

- (75) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-[(4-methyl-3,4-dihydro-2*H*-1,4-benzoxazin-7-yl)methyl]amino)-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (76) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(1-[(5-chloro-1,3-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl]amino}methyl)-phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (77) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-[(5-chloro-1,3-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- 10 (78) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-[(5-chloro-1,3-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (79) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(1-[(5-chloro-1-methyl-3-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)-methyl]amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl]amino}-methyl)phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- 15 (80) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-(1-[(5-chloro-1-methyl-3-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (81) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-[(5-chloro-1-methyl-3-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- 20 (82) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-[(5-chloro-1-methyl-3-phenyl-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl]amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (83) 2-(4-chloro-2-({[(1-[(5-chloro-2-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl]amino}methyl)phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (84) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-{1-[(5-chloro-2-fluorobenzyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (85) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(5-chloro-2-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- 30

(86) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(5-chloro-2-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;

(87) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-(1-{[(5-chloro-2-phenyl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;

(88) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(5-chloro-2-phenyl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;

(89) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(5-chloro-2-phenyl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;

(90) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(1-{[(5-chloro-2-thienyl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl)phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;

(91) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(5-chloro-2-thienyl)-methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;

(92) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(4-methyl-1-{[(5-methyl-3-phenylisoxazol-4-yl)-methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl)-phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;

(93) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(5-methyl-3-phenylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;

(94) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-1-{[(5-methyl-3-phenylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]amino}-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;

(95) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[(5-pyridin-2-yl-2-thienyl)-methyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl)phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;

- (96) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-  
{[(5-pyridin-2-yl-2-thienyl)methyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-  
acetamide;
- (97) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[(5-  
5 pyridin-2-yl-2-thienyl)methyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (98) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[(5-  
pyridin-2-yl-2-thienyl)methyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (99) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(6-chloro-1,3-benzo-  
dioxol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-  
10 acetamide;
- (100) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(6-chloro-1,3-  
benzodioxol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-  
acetamide;
- (101) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(6-chloro-1,3-  
15 benzodioxol-5-yl)methyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-  
acetamide;
- (102) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]-  
amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl)phenoxy]-*N*-ethyl-  
acetamide;
- (103) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-  
20 {[3-(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (104) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[3-  
(trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (105) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[3-  
25 (trifluoromethoxy)benzyl]amino}-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (106) 2-{4-chloro-2-[(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-({[5-(2-thienyl)isoxazol-3-yl]-  
methyl}amino)-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetyl}amino)methyl]phenoxy}-*N*-  
ethylacetamide;

- (107) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-[1-({3-[(2-chloro-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methoxy]benzyl}amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide;
- (108) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-[1-({3-[(2-chloro-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methoxy]benzyl}amino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide;
- (109) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-(1-{[(1*R*,4*S*)-bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-en-2-ylmethyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- (110) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(1-{[(1*R*,4*S*)-bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-en-2-ylmethyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetamide;
- (111) 2-(4-chloro-2-{[(1-{[(cyclohexylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (112) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(cyclohexylmethyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (113) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(cyclohexylmethyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (114) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(cyclohexylmethyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (115) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-{1-[(cyclopentylmethyl)-amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (116) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(cyclopentylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (117) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(cyclopentylmethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (118) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-2-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (119) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-2-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;

- (120) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (121) 2-(4-chloro-2-{{(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- 5 (122) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (123) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (124) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-  
10 [(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (125) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(pyridin-3-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (126) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(quinolin-8-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- 15 (127) 2-(4-chloro-2-{{(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(quinolin-8-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (128) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(quinolin-8-ylmethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (129) 2-[4-chloro-2-({[(1-{[2,2-difluoro-2-(1-oxidopyridin-2-yl)ethyl]-  
20 amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)acetyl]amino}methyl)-phenoxy]-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (130) 2-(4-chloro-2-{{(1-{[2,2-difluoro-2-pyridin-2-ylethyl]amino}-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- 25 (131) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(2,2-difluoro-2-pyridin-2-ylethyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}-acetamide;
- (132) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;

- (133) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methoxybenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (134) 2-(4-chloro-2-{[(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- 5 (135) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (136) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylethyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (137) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylpropyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- 10 (138) 2-(4-chloro-2-{[(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylpropyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (139) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylpropyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- 15 (140) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{4-methyl-2-oxo-1-[(2-phenylpropyl)amino]-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (141) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-(4-methyl-2-oxo-1-{[(2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino})-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl)-acetamide;
- 20 (142) 2-(4-chloro-2-{[(1-[(3,3-dimethylbutyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- (143) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(3,3-dimethylbutyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (144) 2-(4-chloro-2-{[(1-[(4-cyanobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethylacetamide;
- 25 (145) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-{1-[(4-cyanobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (146) 2-(4-chloro-2-{[(1-[(3-cyano-4-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetyl)amino]methyl}phenoxy)-*N*-ethyl-
- 30 acetamide;

- (147) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(3-cyano-4-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- (148) *N*-[(6-amino-2-methylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-{1-[(3-cyano-4-fluorobenzyl)amino]-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl}acetamide;
- 5 (149) 2-[1-(benzylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]-*N*-{5-chloro-2-[2-(ethylamino)-2-oxoethoxy]benzyl}acetamide;
- (150) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorobenzyl]-2-[1-(benzylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide;
- (151) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-[1-(benzylamino)-4-
- 10 methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide;
- (152) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-chlorobenzyl]-2-[1-(isobutylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide;
- (153) *N*-[2-(aminomethyl)-5-methylbenzyl]-2-[1-(isobutylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide; and
- 15 (154) *N*-[(6-amino-2,4-dimethylpyridin-3-yl)methyl]-2-[1-(isobutylamino)-4-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-dihydropyridin-3-yl]acetamide.

### Example 6

Compounds of the Examples were tested in Test B above and were found to

20 exhibit IC<sub>50</sub>TT values of less than 50 μM. Indeed, the compounds of Examples 2(xi) and 2(xii) were found to exhibit IC<sub>50</sub> values of 92.2 nM and 0.62 μM, respectively.

### **Abbreviations**

25

|      |   |                              |
|------|---|------------------------------|
| aq.  | = | aqueous                      |
| AUC  | = | area under the curve         |
| Boc  | = | <i>tert</i> -butoxycarbonyl  |
| BSA  | = | bovine serum albumin         |
| 30 d | = | (in relation to NMR) doublet |

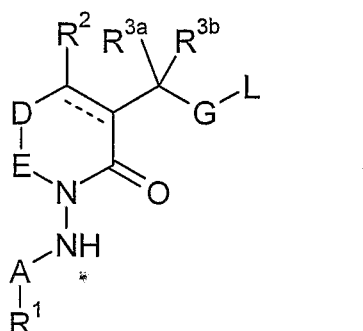
|    |                   |   |                                                                                               |
|----|-------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | DCC               | = | dicyclohexyl carbodiimide                                                                     |
|    | DCE               | = | 1,2-dichloroethane                                                                            |
|    | DCM               | = | dichloromethane                                                                               |
|    | DIPEA             | = | diisopropylethylamine                                                                         |
| 5  | DMAP              | = | 4-( <i>N,N</i> -dimethyl amino) pyridine                                                      |
|    | DMF               | = | dimethylformamide                                                                             |
|    | DMSO              | = | dimethylsulfoxide                                                                             |
|    | DVT               | = | deep vein thrombosis                                                                          |
|    | EDC               | = | 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide                                                 |
| 10 |                   |   | hydrochloride                                                                                 |
|    | Et                | = | ethyl                                                                                         |
|    | ether             | = | diethyl ether                                                                                 |
|    | Et <sub>3</sub> N | = | triethylamine                                                                                 |
|    | EtOAc             | = | ethyl acetate                                                                                 |
| 15 | EtOH              | = | ethanol                                                                                       |
|    | Et <sub>2</sub> O | = | diethyl ether                                                                                 |
|    | h                 | = | hour(s)                                                                                       |
|    | HATU              | = | <i>O</i> -(azabenzotriazol-1-yl)- <i>N,N,N',N'</i> -tetramethyluronium<br>hexafluorophosphate |
| 20 | HBTU              | = | [ <i>N,N,N',N'</i> -tetramethyl- <i>O</i> -(benzotriazol-1-yl)uronium<br>hexafluorophosphate] |
|    | HCl               | = | hydrochloric acid, hydrogen chloride gas or<br>hydrochloride salt (depending on context)      |
|    | HOAt              | = | 1-hydroxy-7-azabenzotriazole                                                                  |
| 25 | HOBt              | = | 1-hydroxybenzotriazole                                                                        |
|    | HPLC              | = | high performance liquid chromatography                                                        |
|    | LC                | = | liquid chromatography                                                                         |
|    | mCPBA             | = | <i>meta</i> -chloroperbenzoic acid                                                            |
|    | Me                | = | methyl                                                                                        |
| 30 | MeOH              | = | methanol                                                                                      |

|    |       |   |                                                                                             |
|----|-------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | min   | = | minute(s)                                                                                   |
|    | MS    | = | mass spectroscopy                                                                           |
|    | NADH  | = | nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, reduced form                                             |
|    | NADPH | = | nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate, reduced                                        |
| 5  |       |   | form                                                                                        |
|    | NBS   | = | <i>N</i> -Bromosuccinimide                                                                  |
|    | NIH   | = | National Institute of Health (US)                                                           |
|    | NIHU  | = | National Institute of Health units                                                          |
|    | OAc   | = | acetate                                                                                     |
| 10 | PCC   | = | pyridinium chlorochromate                                                                   |
|    | Ph    | = | phenyl                                                                                      |
|    | Pr    | = | propyl                                                                                      |
|    | PyBOP | = | (benzotriazol-1-yloxy)tripyrrolidinophosphonium<br>hexafluorophosphate                      |
| 15 | rt/RT | = | room temperature                                                                            |
|    | SOPs  | = | standard operating procedures                                                               |
|    | TBME  | = | <i>tert</i> -butyl methyl ether                                                             |
|    | TBTU  | = | [ <i>N,N,N',N'</i> -tetramethyl- <i>O</i> -(benzotriazol-1-yl)uronium<br>tetrafluoroborate] |
| 20 | TEA   | = | triethylamine                                                                               |
|    | TFA   | = | trifluoroacetic acid                                                                        |
|    | THF   | = | tetrahydrofuran                                                                             |

Prefixes *n*, *s*, *i* and *t* have their usual meanings: normal, secondary, iso and  
25 tertiary. The prefix *c* means cyclo.

## Claims

1. A compound of formula I



5 wherein

the dashed line is absent or represents a bond;

A represents C(O), S(O)<sub>2</sub>, C(O)O (in which latter group the O moiety is attached to R<sup>1</sup>), C(O)NH, S(O)<sub>2</sub>NH (in which latter two groups the NH moiety is attached to R<sup>1</sup>) or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylene;

10

R<sup>1</sup> represents

(a) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, CN, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl (optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy and aryl), OR<sup>4a</sup>, S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sup>4b</sup>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>4c</sup>)(R<sup>4d</sup>), N(R<sup>4e</sup>)S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>4f</sup>, N(R<sup>4g</sup>)(R<sup>4h</sup>), B<sup>1</sup>-C(O)-B<sup>2</sup>-R<sup>4i</sup>, aryl and Het<sup>1</sup>),

15

(b) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl, which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O, CN, C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl (optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy and aryl), OR<sup>4a</sup>, S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sup>4b</sup>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>4c</sup>)(R<sup>4d</sup>), N(R<sup>4e</sup>)S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>4f</sup>, N(R<sup>4g</sup>)(R<sup>4h</sup>), B<sup>3</sup>-C(O)-B<sup>4</sup>-R<sup>4i</sup>, aryl and Het<sup>2</sup>,

20

(c) aryl, or

25

(d) Het<sup>3</sup>;

R<sup>4a</sup> to R<sup>4i</sup> independently represent, at each occurrence,

(a) H,

5 (b) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, aryl and Het<sup>4</sup>),

(c) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, 10 OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, aryl and Het<sup>5</sup>),

(d) aryl or

(e) Het<sup>6</sup>,

provided that R<sup>4b</sup> does not represent H when n is 1 or 2;

15 the group -D-E-

(a) when the dashed line represents a bond, represents -C(R<sup>5a</sup>)=C(R<sup>5b</sup>)-, or

(b) when the dashed line is absent, represents -C(R<sup>6a</sup>)(R<sup>6b</sup>)-C(R<sup>7a</sup>)(R<sup>7b</sup>)-; R<sup>5a</sup> and R<sup>5b</sup> independently represent H, halo, OH, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>0-4</sub>O(C<sub>1-3</sub> 20 alkyl) (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one OH group or one or more F atoms);

R<sup>6a</sup>, R<sup>6b</sup>, R<sup>7a</sup> and R<sup>7b</sup> independently represent H, F or methyl;

or R<sup>5a</sup> and R<sup>5b</sup> together represent C<sub>2-4</sub> *n*-alkylene;

or one of R<sup>6a</sup> and R<sup>6b</sup>, together with one of R<sup>7a</sup> and R<sup>7b</sup>, represents C<sub>1-4</sub> *n*- 25 alkylene;

R<sup>2</sup> represents

(a) H,

(b) halo;

- (c) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, CN, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy, C(O)OH, C(O)O-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl and OC(O)-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl) or
- 5 (d) together with R<sup>3a</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> represents C<sub>2-3</sub> *n*-alkylene, T<sup>1</sup>-(C<sub>1-2</sub> *n*-alkylene) or (C<sub>1-2</sub> *n*-alkylene)-T<sup>1</sup>, which latter three groups are optionally substituted by halo, or
- (e) together with R<sup>3a</sup> and R<sup>3b</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> represents T<sup>2</sup>-[C(H)=], wherein T<sup>2</sup> is bonded to the C-atom to which the group R<sup>2</sup> is attached;

10

R<sup>3a</sup> and R<sup>3b</sup> independently represent H, F or methyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more F atoms), or

- (a) together with R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3a</sup> represents C<sub>2-3</sub> *n*-alkylene, T<sup>1</sup>-(C<sub>1-2</sub> *n*-alkylene) or (C<sub>1-2</sub> *n*-alkylene)-T<sup>1</sup>, which latter three groups are optionally substituted
- 15 by halo, or
- (b) together with R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3a</sup> and R<sup>3b</sup> represent T<sup>2</sup>-[C(H)=], wherein T<sup>2</sup> is bonded to the C-atom to which the group R<sup>2</sup> is attached;

T<sup>1</sup> and T<sup>2</sup> independently represent O, S, N(H) or N(C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl);

20 G represents

(a) -C(O)N(R<sup>8a</sup>)-[CH(C(O)R<sup>9</sup>)]<sub>0-1</sub>-C<sub>0-3</sub> alkylene-(Q<sup>1</sup>)<sub>a</sub>-,

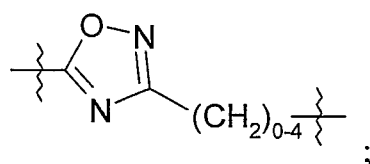
(b) -C(O)N(R<sup>8b</sup>)-C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenylene-(Q<sup>1</sup>)<sub>a</sub>-,

(c)



25

(d)

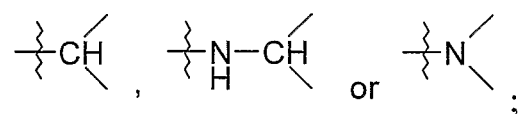


$R^9$  represents H or a 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group comprising one or two rings and containing, as heteroatom(s), one sulfur or oxygen atom and/or one or more nitrogen atoms, which heterocyclic group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

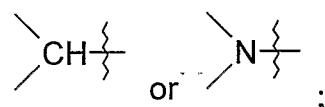
$Q^1$  represents O,  $NR^{10a}$ ,  $[N(H)]_{0-1}C(O)-C_{0-2}$  alkylene,  $C(O)NHNHC(O)$ , or  $-N=C(R^{10b})-$ ;

a represents 0 or 1;

$Q^{2a}$  represents



$Q^{2b}$  represents



15

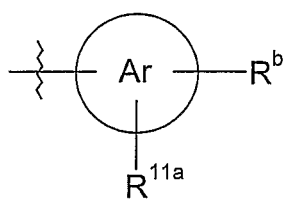
L represents

(a)  $C_{0-6}$  alkylene- $R^a$ ,

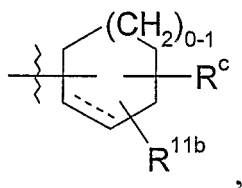
(b)  $C_{0-2}$  alkylene- $\text{CH}=\text{CH}-C_{0-2}$  alkylene- $R^a$ ,

(c)  $C_{0-2}$  alkylene- $\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-C_{0-2}$  alkylene- $R^a$ ,

(d)

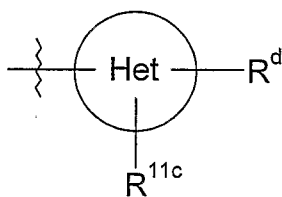


(e)



wherein the dashed line represents an optional double bond, or

(f)



5

Ar represents phenyl or naphthyl;

Het represents a 5- to 10-membered heterocyclic group comprising one or two rings and containing, as heteroatom(s), one sulfur or oxygen atom and/or one or more nitrogen atoms;

10

$R^{11a}$  represents H or one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, CN,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy,  $C(O)OR^{12a}$  and  $C(O)N(R^{12b})R^{12c}$ ) and  $S(O)_{0-2}R^{12d}$ ;

15  $R^{11b}$  and  $R^{11c}$  independently represent H or one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, CN,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy,  $C(O)OR^{12a}$  and  $C(O)N(R^{12b})R^{12c}$ ),  $S(O)_{0-2}R^{12d}$ , =O, =NH, =NOH and =N-CN;

20  $R^{12a}$  to  $R^{12c}$  independently represent H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl or  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one OH or  $N(R^{12e})R^{12f}$  group or by one or more halo atoms);

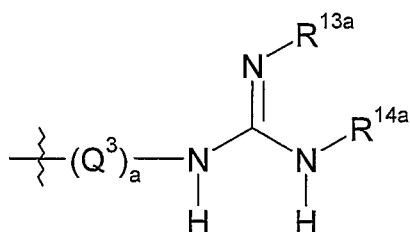
$R^{12d}$  represents, independently at each occurrence,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl optionally substituted by one OH or  $N(R^{12e})R^{12f}$  group or by one or more halo atoms;

176

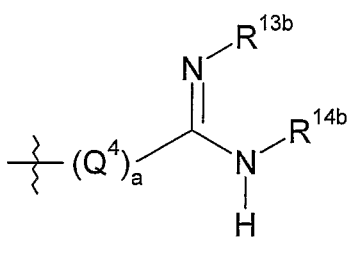
$R^{12e}$  and  $R^{12f}$  represent, independently at each occurrence, H or  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl optionally substituted by one or more halo atoms;

$R^a$  to  $R^d$  independently represent

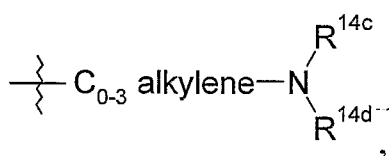
5 (a)



(b)

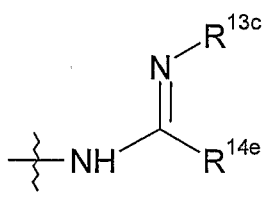


(c)

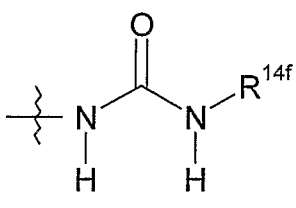


10

(d)

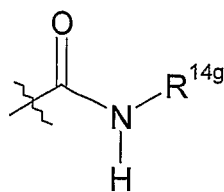


(e)



15

(f)

(g) Het<sup>x</sup>or R<sup>b</sup> to R<sup>d</sup> may also represent H;

5 Q<sup>3</sup> represents O, N(R<sup>10c</sup>), S(O)<sub>2</sub>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>NH, C(O) or -CH=N-;

Q<sup>4</sup> represents O, S or CH<sub>2</sub>;

a represents 0 or 1;

Het<sup>x</sup> represents a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group containing one to four heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and/or sulfur, which  
 10 heterocyclic group may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more halo atoms);

R<sup>13a</sup> to R<sup>13c</sup> independently represent

15 (a) H,

(b) CN,

(c) NH<sub>2</sub>,

(d) OR<sup>15</sup> or

(e) C(O)OR<sup>16</sup>;

20 R<sup>15</sup> represents

(a) H,

(b) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>3-10</sub> alkynyl,

(c) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl, which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo  
 25 and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, or

(d) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl, which latter group is optionally interrupted by oxygen and is substituted by aryl or -O-aryl;

R<sup>16</sup> represents

- (a) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>3-10</sub> alkynyl, which latter three groups are optionally interrupted by one or more oxygen atoms, or
- (b) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl, which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, or
- (c) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl, which latter group is optionally interrupted by oxygen and is substituted by aryl or -O-aryl;

R<sup>8a</sup> to R<sup>8c</sup>, R<sup>10a</sup> to R<sup>10c</sup> and R<sup>14a</sup> to R<sup>14g</sup> independently represent

- (a) H or
- (b) C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo and OH),

or R<sup>14a</sup> and R<sup>14b</sup> independently represent C(O)O-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms),

or R<sup>14c</sup> represents

- (a) C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl substituted by C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl or aryl,
- (b) C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl,
- (c) C(O)O-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms),
- (d) C(O)C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl,
- (e) C(O)N(H)-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms) or
- (f) S(O)<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (the alkyl part of which latter group is optionally substituted by aryl and/or one or more halo atoms),

or R<sup>14c</sup> and R<sup>14d</sup> together represent C<sub>3-6</sub> *n*-alkylene optionally interrupted by O, S, N(H) or N(C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl) and/or substituted by one or more C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl groups;

each aryl independently represents a C<sub>6-10</sub> carbocyclic aromatic group, which group may comprise either one or two rings and may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from

- (a) halo,
- 5 (b) CN,
- (c) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, C(O)OH, C(O)O-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>7</sup>),
- 10 (d) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>8</sup>),
- (e) OR<sup>17a</sup>,
- 15 (f) S(O)<sub>p</sub>R<sup>17b</sup>,
- (g) S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>17c</sup>)(R<sup>17d</sup>),
- (h) N(R<sup>17e</sup>)S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>17f</sup>,
- (i) N(R<sup>17g</sup>)(R<sup>17h</sup>),
- (j) B<sup>5</sup>-C(O)-B<sup>6</sup>-R<sup>17i</sup>,
- 20 (k) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo),
- (l) Het<sup>9</sup> and
- (m) Si(R<sup>18a</sup>)(R<sup>18b</sup>)(R<sup>18c</sup>);

R<sup>17a</sup> to R<sup>17i</sup> independently represent, at each occurrence,

- 25 (a) H,
- (b) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>10</sup>),

- (c) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>11</sup>),
- 5 (d) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) or
- (e) Het<sup>12</sup>,
- provided that R<sup>17b</sup> does not represent H when p is 1 or 2;

Het<sup>1</sup> to Het<sup>12</sup> independently represent 4- to 14-membered heterocyclic groups containing one or more heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and/or sulfur, which heterocyclic groups may comprise one, two or three rings and may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from

- (a) halo,
- (b) CN,
- 15 (c) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, C(O)OH, C(O)O-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>a</sup>),
- (d) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>b</sup>),
- 20 (e) =O,
- (f) OR<sup>19a</sup>,
- 25 (g) S(O)<sub>q</sub>R<sup>19b</sup>,
- (h) S(O)<sub>2</sub>N(R<sup>19c</sup>)(R<sup>19d</sup>),
- (i) N(R<sup>19e</sup>)S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>19f</sup>,
- (j) N(R<sup>19g</sup>)(R<sup>19h</sup>),
- (k) B<sup>7</sup>-C(O)-B<sup>8</sup>-R<sup>19i</sup>,
- 30 (l) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo),

(m) Het<sup>c</sup> and

(n) Si(R<sup>20a</sup>)(R<sup>20b</sup>)(R<sup>20c</sup>);

R<sup>19a</sup> to R<sup>19i</sup> independently represent, at each occurrence,

5 (a) H,

(b) C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl (which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>d</sup>),

10 (c) C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>4-10</sub> cycloalkenyl (which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, OH, =O, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) and Het<sup>e</sup>),

(d) phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo) or

15 (e) Het<sup>f</sup>,

provided that R<sup>19b</sup> does not represent H when q is 1 or 2;

Het<sup>a</sup> to Het<sup>f</sup> independently represent 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic groups containing one to four heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and/or  
20 sulfur, which heterocyclic groups may be substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, =O and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;

B<sup>1</sup> to B<sup>8</sup> independently represent a direct bond, O, S or NH;

n, p and q independently represent 0, 1 or 2;

25

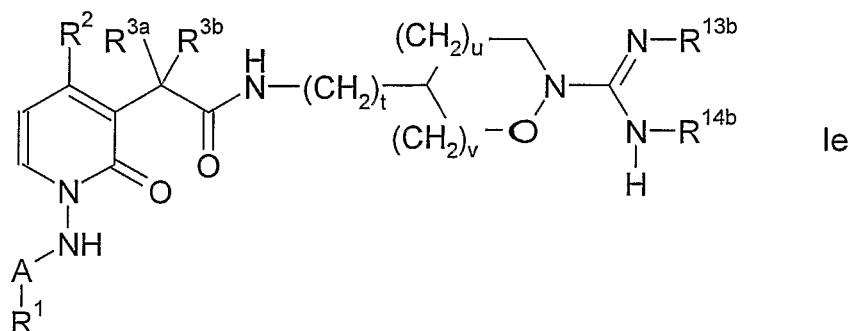
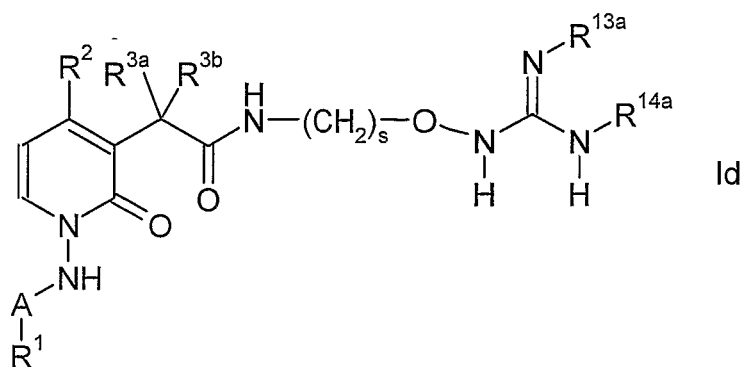
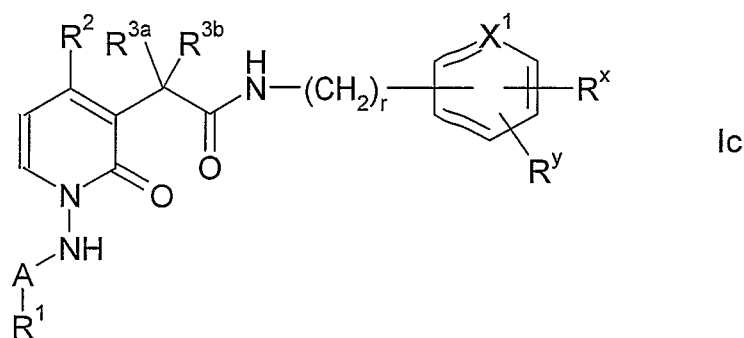
R<sup>18a</sup>, R<sup>18b</sup>, R<sup>18c</sup>, R<sup>20a</sup>, R<sup>20b</sup> and R<sup>20c</sup> independently represent C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or phenyl (which latter group is optionally substituted by halo or C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl);

unless otherwise specified

- (i) alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, alkylene and alkenylene groups, as well as the alkyl part of alkoxy groups, may be substituted by one or more halo atoms, and
- 5 (ii) cycloalkyl and cycloalkenyl groups may comprise one or two rings and may additionally be ring-fused to one or two phenyl groups;

or a pharmaceutically-acceptable derivative thereof.

- 10 2. A compound as claimed in Claim 1, which is a compound of formula Ic, Id or Ie,



wherein  $X^1$  represents CH or N;

when  $X^1$  represents CH

(a)  $R^x$  represents  $R^b$  as defined in Claim 1, and

(b)  $R^y$  represents  $R^{11a}$  as defined in Claim 1;

5 when  $X^1$  represents N

(a)  $R^x$  represents  $R^d$  as defined in Claim 1, and

(b)  $R^y$  represents  $R^{11c}$  as defined in Claim 1;

$r$  represents 1 to 3;

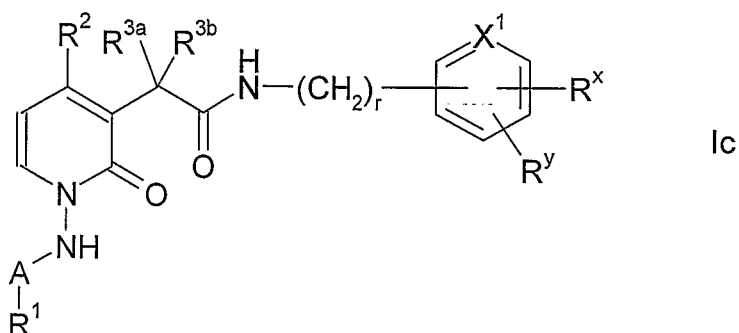
$s$  represents 2 to 4;

10  $t$  represents 1 to 3;

$u$  and  $v$  independently represent 0 to 2, the sum of  $u$  and  $v$  being 1 or 2; and

$R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ ,  $R^{11a}$ ,  $R^{11c}$ ,  $R^{13a}$ ,  $R^{13b}$ ,  $R^{14a}$ ,  $R^{14b}$ ,  $R^b$ ,  $R^d$  and  $A$  are as defined in Claim 1.

15 3. A compound as claimed in Claim 2 which is a compound of formula Ic,



wherein

$A$  represents  $\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2$  (in which latter group the  $\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)$  unit is attached to  $R^1$ ) or  $\text{CH}_2$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_2$  or  $\text{CF}_2\text{CH}_2$  (in which latter group the  $\text{CF}_2$  unit is attached to  $R^1$ );

$R^1$  represents

(a) isopropyl or *tert*-butyl,

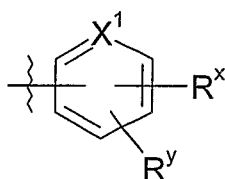
(b) cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl or bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-ene,

- (c) phenyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from halo, CN, methyl, CF<sub>3</sub>, methoxy, OCF<sub>3</sub>, phenoxy, morpholin-4-yl or O-CH<sub>2</sub>-(2-chlorothiazol-5-yl),
- (d) imidazolyl optionally substituted by one to three substituents selected from Cl, methyl and phenyl,
- (e) isoxazolyl optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from methyl, phenyl and 2-thienyl,
- (f) thiazolyl optionally substituted by one or two methyl groups,
- (g) thienyl optionally substituted by Cl or pyridinyl,
- (h) pyrazolyl optionally substituted by one to three substituents selected from Cl, methyl, ethyl, phenyl and morpholin-4-yl,
- (i) pyrrolyl optionally substituted by one to three substituents selected from methyl, S(O)<sub>2</sub>-phenyl, C(O)-phenyl and 1,3,4-triazol-1-yl,
- (j) pyridinyl optionally substituted by OH, methoxy or morpholin-4-yl, and optionally in the form of an *N*-oxide,
- (k) pyridonyl,
- (l) pyrazinyl,
- (m) benzodioxolyl optionally substituted by halo,
- (n) benzomorpholinyl optionally substituted by methyl;
- (o) 2,1,3-benzoxadiazolyl,
- (p) 2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl or
- (q) quinolinyl;

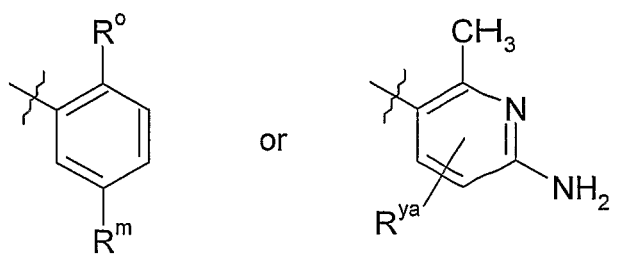
R<sup>5</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> both represent H;

r represents 1;

the group



represents



$R^o$  represents H, F, Cl, OH, methyl, tetrazol-1-yl,  $OCH_2C(O)N(H)R^{12b}$  or  $CH_2N(H)R^{14c}$ ;

5  $R^{12b}$  represents H or  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl optionally substituted by  $N(CH_3)_2$ ;

$R^{14c}$  represents  $C(O)O$ -*tert*-butyl, H, ethyl,  $CH_2CF_3$  or cyclopentyl;

$R^m$  represents H, methyl,  $CF_3$ , methoxy, F or Cl; and

$R^{ya}$  represents H or methyl.

10 4. A pharmaceutical formulation including a compound as defined in any one of Claims 1 to 3, or a pharmaceutically acceptable derivative thereof, in admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable adjuvant, diluent or carrier.

15 5. A compound as defined in any one of Claims 1 to 3, or a pharmaceutically acceptable derivative thereof, for use as a pharmaceutical.

6. The use of a compound as defined in any one of Claims 1 to 3, or a pharmaceutically acceptable derivative thereof, as an active ingredient for  
20 the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a condition where inhibition of thrombin is beneficial.

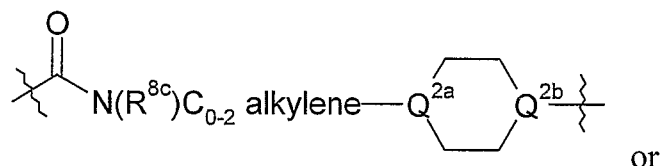
7. A method of treatment of a condition where inhibition of thrombin is beneficial, which method comprises administration of a therapeutically  
25 effective amount of a compound as defined in any one of Claims 1 to 3, or a

pharmaceutically acceptable derivative thereof, to a person suffering from, or susceptible to, such a condition.

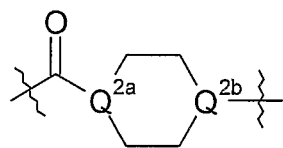
8. A process for the preparation of a compound of formula I as defined in Claim 1, which comprises:

(a) for compounds of formula I in which the group G represents

- (i)  $\text{C(O)N(R}^{8a}\text{)-[CH(C(O)R}^9\text{)]}_{0-1}\text{-C}_{0-3}\text{ alkylene-(Q}^1\text{)}_a\text{-}$ ,
- (ii)  $\text{C(O)N(R}^{8b}\text{)-C}_{2-3}\text{ alkenylene-(Q}^1\text{)}_a\text{-}$ ,
- (iii)  $\text{C(O)N(R}^{8b}\text{)-C}_{2-3}\text{ alkynylene-(Q}^1\text{)}_a\text{-}$ ,
- (iv)

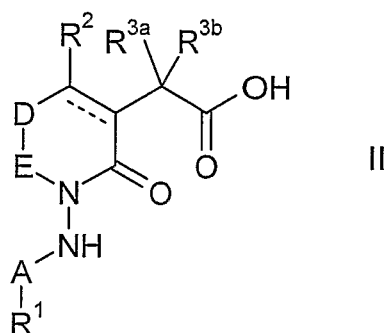


(v)

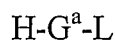


wherein  $\text{Q}^{2a}$  represents N or NHCH,

coupling of a compound of formula II,



wherein the dashed line,  $\text{R}^1$ ,  $\text{R}^2$ ,  $\text{R}^{3a}$ ,  $\text{R}^{3b}$ , A, D and E are as defined in Claim 1, with a compound of formula III,

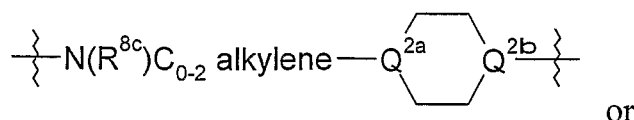


III

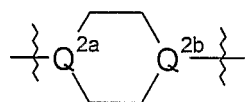
wherein L is as defined in Claim 1 and  $\text{G}^a$  represents

187

- (i)  $-N(R^{8a})-[CH(C(O)R^9)]_{0-1}-C_{0-3}$  alkylene $-(Q^1)_a-$ ,  
 (ii)  $-N(R^{8b})-C_{2-3}$  alkenylene $-(Q^1)_a-$ ,  
 (iii)  $-N(R^{8b})-C_{2-3}$  alkynylene $-(Q^1)_a-$ ,  
 (iv)

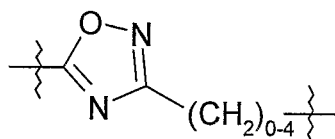


(v)

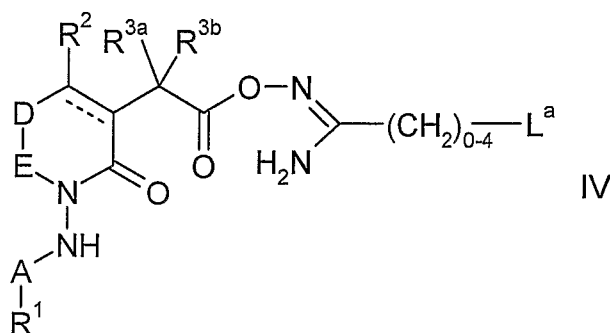


wherein  $Q^{2a}$  represents N or NHCH and  $R^{8a}$ ,  $R^{8b}$ ,  $R^{8c}$ ,  $R^9$ ,  $Q^1$ ,  $Q^{2b}$  and  $a$  are as defined in Claim 1;

- (b) for compounds of formula I in which G represents



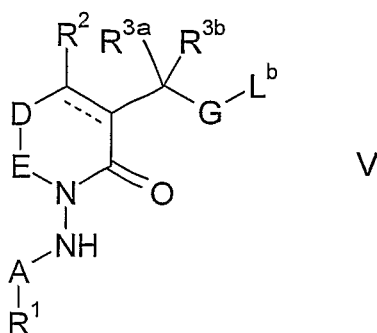
and L represents  $L^a$ , which latter group represents L as defined in Claim 1, except that it does not represent  $C_0$  alkylene- $R^a$ , cyclisation of a compound of formula IV,



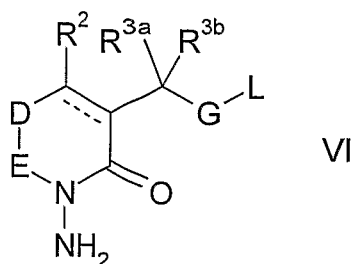
wherein  $L^a$  is as defined above and the dashed line,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ , A, D and E are as defined in Claim 1;

- (c) for compounds of formula I in which  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$ ,  $R^c$  or  $R^d$  represents  $-C(=NH)NH_2$ ,  $-C(=NNH_2)NH_2$  or  $-C(=NOH)NH_2$ , reaction of a compound of formula V,

188



- wherein  $L^b$  represents  $L$  as defined in Claim 1, except that  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$ ,  $R^c$  or  $R^d$  (as appropriate) is replaced by a cyano or  $-C(=NH)O-C_{1-4}$  alkyl group, and the dashed line,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ ,  $A$ ,  $D$ ,  $E$  and  $G$  are as defined in Claim 1,
- 5 with a suitable source of ammonia, hydrazine or hydroxylamine;
- (d) for compounds of formula I in which  $R^{13a}$ ,  $R^{13b}$  or  $R^{13c}$  represents  $H$ , deprotection of a corresponding compound of formula I in which  $R^{13a}$ ,  $R^{13b}$  or  $R^{13c}$  (as appropriate) represents  $C(O)O-CH_2$ aryl;
- (e) for compounds of formula I in which  $R^{14c}$  represents  $H$ , deprotection of a
- 10 corresponding compound of formula I in which  $R^{14c}$  represents  $C(O)O-C_{1-6}$  alkyl;
- (f) reaction of a compound of formula VI,



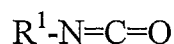
- wherein the dashed line,  $R^2$ ,  $R^{3a}$ ,  $R^{3b}$ ,  $A$ ,  $D$ ,  $E$ ,  $G$  and  $L$  are as defined in
- 15 Claim 1, with a compound of formula VII,



VII

wherein  $Lg^1$  represents a leaving group and  $R^1$  and  $A$  are as defined in Claim 1;

- (g) for compounds of formula I in which  $A$  represents  $C(O)NH$ , reaction of
- 20 a compound of formula VI, as defined above, with a compound of formula VIII,



VIII

wherein  $R^1$  is as defined in Claim 1;

- (h) for compounds of formula I in which A represents  $C_{1-6}$  alkylene, reaction of a compound of formula VI, as defined above, with a compound  
 5 of formula IX,



IX

wherein  $R^1$  is as defined in Claim 1, followed by reduction in the presence of a reducing agent; or

- (i) for compounds of formula I in which  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$ ,  $R^c$  or  $R^d$  represents  
 10  $-C(=NCN)NH_2$ , reaction of a corresponding compound of formula I in which  $R^a$ ,  $R^b$ ,  $R^c$  or  $R^d$ , respectively, represents  $-C(=NH)NH_2$  with cyanogen bromide.

9. A compound of formula II, as defined in Claim 8, or a protected  
 15 derivative thereof.

10. A compound of formula IV, as defined in Claim 8, or a protected derivative thereof.

- 20 11. A compound of formula VI, as defined in Claim 8, or a protected derivative thereof.